

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the Vodafone 802N handset.

- Read this guide thoroughly before using the Vodafone 802N handset to ensure proper usage.
- After reading this guide, keep it for later reference.
- Accessible services may be limited to contract conditions or service area.

The Vodafone 802N handset is compatible with the W-CDMA network system.

Note

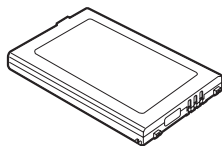
- Unauthorised copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- The guide contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, please contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with the handset: These accessories are also sold separately.

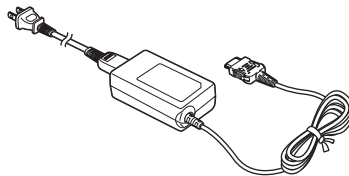
For details on accessories or optional items, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

■ Battery



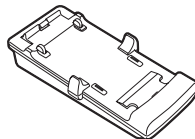
NEBL01

■ Rapid Charger



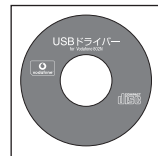
NECL01

■ Desktop Holder



NEEL01

■ USB Driver: CD-ROM and Installation Manual (Japanese Only)



The handset supports miniSD Memory Card (not included). Purchase miniSD Memory Card(s) if necessary.

Contents

Accessories	i
Contents	ii
About This Guide	xiv
Safety Precautions	xvii
General Notes	xxviii

Basic Operations

1 Getting Started

Main Features	1-2
USIM Card	1-4
Before Using the USIM Card	1-4
General Notes Regarding the USIM Card	1-4
Inserting/Removing the USIM Card	1-5
PIN	1-6
Handset Parts & Functions	1-7
Handset	1-7
Display Indicators	1-10
Sub Display	1-11
Battery & Charger	1-12
Before Using Battery & Charger	1-12
Inserting/Removing the Battery	1-15
Charging with the Rapid Charger	1-16

Charging with the Desktop Holder	1-17
Charging with the In-Car Charger	1-18

Turning the Handset On/Off

Turning the Handset On	1-19
Turning the Handset Off	1-20

Setting the Clock

Keys & Menus

Softkeys	1-21
Navigating the Menus	1-21
Using the Function Menu	1-23
Menu Display Set	1-23

Multitasking

Launching New Tasks	1-24
Switching Tasks	1-25
Ending Tasks	1-25

Handset Codes

Security Code	1-25
Centre Access Code	1-26
Network Password	1-26

2 Basic Handset Operations

Making a Call

Making a Call from Call Logs

Redialling	2-3
Dialling a Number on Received Calls List	2-4
Messaging Logs	2-5
Answering Voice Calls	2-6
When You Cannot Answer the Phone	2-7
Putting a Caller on Hold	2-7
Recording Messages to the Handset	2-7
Rejecting Calls	2-8
Preventing Nuisance Calls	2-8
Operations During a Call	2-9
Adjusting Earpiece Volume Level	2-9
Putting a Caller on Hold	2-9
Voice Recorder	2-9
Switching to Handsfree	2-10
Communicating Simultaneously	2-10
Receiving Calls/Data while Communicating	2-10
Opening Another Session while Communicating	2-10
Missed Calls/New Messages	2-11
Checking Missed Calls/New Messages	2-11
Checking Information Notice with Handset Closed	2-11
Turning Side Key Tone ON/OFF for Closed Handset (Information Notice Settings)	2-12
Call Duration	2-12
Checking the Duration	2-12
Resetting All Calls Duration	2-13
My Contact Details	2-13

Viewing My Contact Details	2-13
Saving/Editing My Contact Details	2-13
Other Operations Available for My Contact Details	2-14

3 Manner Mode

Minding Mobile Manners	3-2
Setting Manner Mode	3-3
Setting/Releasing Manner Mode	3-3
Customising Manner Mode Settings	3-4

4 Entering Characters

Text Entry	4-2
Text Entry Window	4-2
Text Input Mode	4-3
Key Assignments	4-4
Entering Characters in 5-touch Input Mode	4-5
Entering Kanji/Hiragana	4-5
Entering Katakana	4-6
Entering Roman Letters	4-6
Entering Numbers	4-7
Entering Symbols/Pictographs	4-7
Entering Smileys	4-8
Entering Spaces	4-8
Entering Line Feed	4-8
Entering Characters Using Data from Other Functions	4-9

Entering Text Using Word Prediction	4-9
Entering Text Using Kuten Codes	4-10
Text Input Modes	4-11
Entering Text Using the T9 Mode	4-11
Entering Text Using 2-touch Method	4-14
Setting Text Input Method	4-16
Switching Text Input Methods	4-16
Setting Prediction	4-16
Setting Guidance	4-16
Deleting Learned Data	4-17
Using Own Dictionary	4-17
Saving Text Strings	4-17
Editing/Deleting Dictionary Entries	4-17
Editing Text	4-18
Correcting Text	4-18
Deleting Characters	4-18
Copying/Cutting/Pasting	4-18
Moving the Cursor to the Beginning/End of Text	4-19

5 Phone Book

Saving Contacts to a Phone Book	5-2
Phone Book Entry Items	5-2
Creating Contacts in Phone Book	5-3
Creating Contacts from Logs	5-5
Setting Groups	5-6

Setting Utilities	5-7
Using Phone Book Utilities	5-7
Using Group Utilities	5-8
Viewing/Canceling Utilities Settings	5-8
Using the Phone Book	5-9
Making a Call from the Phone Book	5-9
Using the Function Menu with Contacts	5-11
Managing Phone Book Data on the Handset and USIM Card	5-12
Editing the Phone Book	5-13
Editing Contacts	5-13
Deleting Contacts	5-13

6 Video Call

Before Making a Video Call	6-2
Video Call Screen	6-2
Making a Video Call	6-2
Answering a Video Call	6-3
Operations during a Video Call	6-4
Video Call Settings	6-5
Selecting Video Quality	6-5
My Image Sending	6-6
Selecting Alternative Image or On Hold Image	6-6
Setting Voice Call Auto Switch	6-6
Setting Main Image	6-7
Using Video Call Auto Answer	6-7

7 Camera

Before Using the Camera	7-2
Before Capturing Images	7-2
General Notes Regarding the Camera	7-2
Main Display Overview	7-3
Capturing Images	7-4
Image Capturing Modes	7-4
Capturing Images	7-4
Capturing Videos	7-7
Video Capturing Modes	7-7
Capturing Videos	7-8
Useful Camera Options	7-10
Picture Voice	7-10
Chance Capture	7-11
Viewing Captured Images	7-12
Viewing an Image	7-12
Viewing a Video	7-12
Editing Captured Images	7-12
Editing an Image	7-12
Editing a Video	7-14
Sending a captured Image/Video	7-15
Specifying DPOF for Images	7-16
Specifying Images and Number of Prints of Each	7-16
Cancelling DPOF Setting	7-16

8 Display and Lighting

Display	8-2
Clock Display	8-2
Setting Clock Display	8-2
Customising the Clock Display Size	8-3
Display Light	8-3
Colour Pattern	8-4
Using the Desktop	8-4
Adding Desktop Icons	8-5
Opening an Option or File from a Desktop Icon	8-5
Viewing Desktop Icon Properties	8-5
Editing a Desktop Icon Name	8-5
Resetting Default Desktop Icons	8-5
Deleting a Desktop Icon	8-5
Automatic Display	8-6
Setting Automatic Display	8-6
Selecting a Phone Number for Automatic Display	8-6
Sub Display	8-6
Font Settings	8-7
Selecting the Display Language	8-8
Setting Illumination	8-8
Setting Illumination in Talk	8-9

9 Sounds

Ringtones	9-2
Setting Ring Volume	9-2
Selecting a Ringtone	9-2
Vibrator	9-4
Messaging Ring	9-4
Ringing Time	9-5
Voice Announce	9-5
Sound Settings	9-6
Keypad Sound	9-6
Charge Sound	9-6
Selecting Hold Tone	9-7

10 Media Player

Before Using the Media Player	10-2
Playing Melodies/Sounds	10-2
Displaying Images	10-3
Playing Videos	10-5
Selecting and Playing a Video	10-5
Using a Playlist	10-6
Media Player Settings	10-7
Setting Play Pattern	10-7
Setting Display Light while Playing a File	10-7

11 Memory Card

Before Using a Memory Card	11-2
Handling miniSD Memory Cards	11-2
Inserting/Removing a miniSD Memory Card	11-3
Using Memory Cards	11-4
Formatting a miniSD Memory Card	11-4
Viewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card	11-5
Transferring Data	11-7
Copying/Moving One File	11-7
Importing/Exporting Data	11-8

12 Data Management (Data Folder and vfiles)

Data Folder	12-2
Data Folder Structure	12-2
Opening Saved Files	12-4
Opening Files	12-4
Using the Function Menu of the Data Folder	12-5
Using Image Files	12-5
Using Image Files	12-5
Combining Four Images into One	12-6
Creating Animations	12-6
Using Sound Files	12-7
Setting as a Ringtone	12-7
Using vfiles	12-7

vfiles	12-7
Creating or Saving vfiles	12-8
Adding vfiles to Associated Functions.	12-8
Managing Folders	12-9
Creating Folders	12-9
Renaming Folders	12-9
Deleting Folders	12-10
Managing Files	12-10
Renaming Files	12-10
Moving Files	12-10

13 Infrared Data Communication

Before Using Infrared Data Communication	13-2
When Performing IrDA Communications.	13-2
Using IrDA Communications	13-3
Transferring Data One by One	13-3
Transferring All Data at Once.	13-3

14 Handset Security

Changing the Security Code	14-2
Setting PIN Codes	14-2
Changing the PIN1/PIN2	14-2
Requiring the PIN1 when the Handset is Turned On	14-2
Unlocking a PIN	14-3

Preventing Unauthorised Use of the Handset	14-3
All Lock	14-3
Personal Information Management (PIM Lock)	14-4
Keypad Dial Lock	14-5
Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls	14-5
Setting Restrictions.	14-5
Setting Reject Unknown	14-6
Setting Call Setting without ID	14-7
Saving a Secret Contact/Schedule	14-8
Saving Phone Book Contacts/Schedule Events as Secret.	14-8
Accessing, Editing or Deleting Secret Data.	14-8
Side Keys Guard	14-9
Restoring Default Settings	14-10
Reset Settings	14-10
Memory Reset	14-10
All Reset	14-10

15 Using Accessories

Using Schedule.	15-2
Calendar Views	15-2
Switching Weekly and Monthly Views.	15-2
Saving Scheduled Events	15-3
Saving a Holiday/Anniversary.	15-4
Checking Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary.	15-4
Editing Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary	15-5
Deleting Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary	15-5

Using the Alarm Clock	15-6	Pause Dial	16-2
Setting the Alarm Clock.	15-6	Noise Reduction	16-3
Enabling/Disabling an Alarm Setting	15-7	Call Data	16-3
Deleting an Alarm Clock Setting.	15-8	Advanced Dialling Options	16-3
Using Tasks	15-8	Prefix Settings	16-3
Saving Entries in Tasks	15-8	Answering Calls with Message Recorder	16-4
Checking Entries in Tasks	15-9	Setting Record Message	16-4
Editing Entries in Tasks	15-10	Playing Recordings in Record Message	16-5
Deleting Entries in Tasks	15-10	Deleting Recordings in Record Message	16-5
Text Memo	15-11	Setting Priority of the Alarm	16-6
Saving a Text Memo	15-11	Shortcut Menu	16-6
Viewing/Using a Text Memo	15-11	Accessing a Function Using a Shortcut	16-6
Deleting a Text Memo	15-12	Creating a Shortcut	16-6
Voice Recorder	15-12	Subaddress Settings	16-7
Recording with the Voice Recorder in Standby	15-12	Folding Settings	16-7
Playing a Recording	15-12	Using a Handsfree Headset	16-7
Calculator	15-13	Making a Call Using the Switch of the Handsfree Headset	16-7
Access Reader	15-13	Answering a Call Using the Switch of the Handsfree Headset	16-8
STEP 1 Scan and Save Text	15-14	Automatic Answer	16-8
STEP 2 Use the Text String	15-15	Checking the Use of the Memory Space	16-8
Bar Code Reader	15-16	Data Communication Using External Devices	16-9
Using the Light	15-18	Required Devices for Data Exchange	16-9
		Before Performing Data Exchange	16-9

16 Advanced Functions

Advanced Operations during a Call	16-2
--	-------------

17 Optional Services

Optional Services Overview	17-2
Using Optional Services	17-2
Using Menus for Optional Services.	17-2
Service Codes	17-2
Operating from a Landline	17-4
Call Forwarding/Voice Mail	17-4
Activating Call Forwarding/Voice Mail.	17-4
Deactivating Call Forwarding/Voice Mail	17-5
Playing Voice Mail Messages	17-6
Setting the Voice Mailbox Number	17-6
Call Waiting	17-6
Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting	17-6
Receiving a Second Call	17-7
Call Barring	17-7
Setting Call Barring	17-8
Deactivating All Call Barring	17-8
Changing the Network Password	17-8
Caller ID	17-9
Sending Caller ID	17-9
Hiding Caller ID	17-9

Vodafone live!

18 Vodafone live!

Before Using Vodafone live!	18-2
Vodafone live! Services	18-2
Network Settings	18-3
Customising Handset Address	18-4

19 Receiving Messages

Opening New Messages	19-2
Downloading MMS	19-3
Using Received Messages	19-4

20 Sending Messages

Creating Messages	20-2
Steps	20-2
STEP 1 Enter Message Text	20-3
STEP 2 Enter Addresses	20-4
STEP 3 Enter a Subject	20-5
STEP 4 Send	20-5
Attaching Files	20-5
Attaching Files Saved in Data Folder	20-5
Attachment List	20-6

Creating Slide Show	20-7
Editing Slides	20-8
Setting Slide Intervals	20-9
Deleting a Slide	20-9
Setting Sending Options	20-9
Saving Created Messages	20-10
Saving in Drafts	20-10
Saving in Templates	20-11

21 Mailbox

Viewing Messages	21-2
Viewing Messages from a Message List	21-2
Operations from the Message Window	21-3
Managing Folders	21-6
Renaming Folders	21-6
Moving Messages to Other Folders	21-6
Replying to Messages	21-6
Forwarding Messages	21-7
Sending Messages from Unsent Messages	21-8
Sending One Message at a Time	21-8
Send All Unsent Messages at Once	21-8
Locking Messages	21-9
Deleting Messages	21-9
Specifying and Deleting Messages	21-9
Deleting All Messages in a Folder	21-10

Using a Phone Number, e-mail Address or URL in a Message	21-11
Saving to the Phone Book	21-11
Making a Call/Send a Message/Access the Internet	21-11
Using Attachments	21-12
Opening Attachments	21-12
Saving to the Data Folder	21-12
Operations from the Message List	21-13
Rearranging Messages in Received Messages or the User Folder	21-13
Moving Received SMS to the USIM Card	21-13

22 Mail Server

Using the Mail List	22-2
Acquire the Mail List	22-2
Receiving MMS from the Mail List	22-2
Deleting MMS on the Mail Server Using the Mail List	22-3
Forwarding Messages on the Mail Server	22-3

23 Other Message Settings

Mailing List	23-2
Saving to a Mailing List	23-2
Deleting Mailing List Entries	23-3
Sending Settings	23-3
Setting Message Expiration	23-3
Specifying a Delivery Time	23-3

Setting the Default Message Type	23-4
Receiving Settings	23-4
MMS Download Setting (Auto Receiving)	23-4
Rejecting Anonymous Messages	23-5
Delivery Report	23-5
Delivery Report for Sent Messages.	23-5
Delivery Acknowledgement for Received Messages	23-5
Personalization	23-5
Setting Signature	23-5
Setting Opening Phrase (Salutation)	23-6
Message Settings	23-6
Setting Play Preference for Slides	23-6
Setting Font Size.	23-7
Changing the SMS Centre Number	23-7
Setting MMS Creation Mode	23-7
Restoring All Message Settings to Their Defaults	23-8
Deleting All Saved Messages.	23-8

24 Basic Web Operations

Before Using the Web	24-2
Accessing the Web	24-2
Accessing from Menus	24-2
Entering a URL	24-3
Navigating a Web Page	24-3
Using a Phone Number, e-mail Address or URL on the Web Page	24-6

25 Using Information

Using Image Files	25-2
Saving to the Data Folder	25-2
Using Melody Files	25-2
Playing a Melody	25-2
Saving to the Data Folder	25-3
Using Files	25-3
My Saved Page	25-4
Saving in My Saved Page	25-4
Viewing a Page in My Saved Page	25-4
Editing Saved Pages	25-4
Deleting from My Saved Page	25-5
Bookmarks	25-5
Saving to Bookmarks	25-5
Accessing from Bookmarks.	25-5
Editing Bookmarks	25-6
Deleting Bookmarks	25-6
Access History	25-6
Operations from a Web Page	25-7
Refresh/Reopen a Web Page.	25-7
Searching for a Text String on a Web Page	25-7
Copying a Text String from a Web Page	25-8
Viewing a URL	25-8
Sending a URL by Messaging	25-8
Viewing Certificates	25-8

26 Other Web Settings

Multimedia	26-2
Scroll Step (Scrolling Unit)	26-2
Setting Font Size	26-2
Security Settings	26-2
Cookies	26-2
Manufacture Number	26-3
Viewing Certificates	26-3
Initialising Web	26-3
Restoring Web Settings to Their Defaults	26-3
Deleting Entries from the Access History	26-3
Clearing the Cache of Web Pages	26-4

27 Basic V-application Operations

Before Using V-applications	27-2
Downloading V-applications	27-2
Launching V-applications	27-3
Ending/Pausing/Resuming a V-application	27-4
Ending or Pausing a V-application	27-4
Resuming Paused V-applications	27-5
Managing V-applications	27-5
Checking Properties	27-5
Moving a V-application	27-5
Deleting a V-application	27-5

28 Using V-applications

V-application Screensaver	28-2
Setting V-application Security Levels	28-3
Setting Security Levels	28-3
Resetting Security Levels	28-4

29 Other V-applications Settings

Call Preferred	29-2
Volume/Vibrator	29-2
Setting Play Volume	29-2
Setting the Vibrator	29-2
Display Light	29-3
Initialising V-applications	29-3
Restoring V-applications Settings to Their Defaults	29-3
Deleting All V-applications	29-4

30 Appendix

Main Features	30-2
Settings to be Reset	30-11
Multitasking Combination	30-15
Troubleshooting	30-16
Basic Operations	30-16
Vodafone live!	30-20

Kuten Codes	30-22
Symbols and Pictographs	30-28
Symbols	30-28
Pictographs	30-29
Smileys	30-31
Memory Capacity	30-32
Specifications	30-32
Index	30-34
Warranty and After Sales Service	30-45
Customer Service	30-46

About This Guide

In this Vodafone 802N User guide, 802N refers to Vodafone 802N.

Display Images

- Screen illustrations in this guide are provided as examples. Items or numbers appearing in the illustrations may differ from those actually appearing on your handset display.
- Some illustrations may be enlarged for easier viewing.

Screen Messages

- Before using the handset, set the Clock.
A warning appears when attempting to use some functions that are not available until the Clock is set.
- This guide describes instructions using mainly default settings. If settings are changed, the display images or handset reactions may differ from those in this guide. When a screen message appears, read it carefully.

Example 1: If Keypad Dial Lock or Call Barring settings are changed, a warning appears to indicate that a call cannot be made when you place an outgoing call.

Example 2: While in Manner Mode, a confirmation whether or not to play a melody or video may appear when you attempt to play a sound file.

Trademarks

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773

5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073

5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196

5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754

5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569

5,710,784 5,778,338


- T9 Text Input® and the T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications.

T9 Text Input has applied for or obtained global patents.



- LC Font/LC FONT®, as well as the LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.



- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and  symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

Dialog Clarity and WOW technology are manufactured based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.



- miniSD™ is a trademark of the SD Association.



- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is licensed in accord with the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for personal and noncommercial use only when:
 - Capturing a video that complies with the MPEG-4 Visual standards (MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing a MPEG-4 Video captured by a consumer who engages in personal and nonprofit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Video provided by a party licensed by MPEG-LAContact MPEG LA, LLC, a company in the United States, when using this product for promotion, in-house use, for-profit or other purposes.
- This product incorporates IrFront® for OBEX and infrared communications. IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- IrFront® is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries. Copyright ©1996-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Incorporated.
- Browser software copyright ©2004 Openwave Systems Inc. All rights reserved.
- JBlend™ is incorporated in this product. JBlend™ is a Java™ execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.



- Powered by JBlend™ Technology
JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- Powered by JBlend™, ©1997-2004 Aplix Corporation.
All rights reserved.
- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- “着うた®” is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.
- Neue Helvetica™ is a Trademark of Heidelberger Druckmaschinen AG which may be registered in certain jurisdictions, exclusively licensed through Linotype Library GmbH, a wholly owned subsidiary of Heidelberger Druckmaschinen AG.
- “チャンスキャプチャ/Chance capture”, “ランダムメロディ/Random melody”, “ピクチャボイス/Picture voice”, “アクセスリーダー”, “おしゃべり機能”, “クールホッケー2/COOL HOCKEY 2”, “マルチタスク/MULTITASK”, “ワード予測” and “NEC SUPER TOWN” are trademarks of NEC Corporation.



Safety Precautions

- To ensure safe use of the handset, please read these Safety Precautions carefully before use. After reading, please keep the Safety Precautions for future reference.
- The following precautions are provided for your benefit to protect you and others and to avoid damage to property. Please observe these Safety Precautions.

Vodafone shall not be liable for any damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of improper use of this product, failure during use, memory loss or any other nonconformity.

Symbols

This guide uses various symbols to facilitate your understanding of the contents, ensure correct use to prevent injury to yourself and others and prevent damage to property. The symbols used and their meanings are described below. Read the main text only after thoroughly understanding the meaning of these.



Danger

Improper handling poses a great risk of death or serious injury.



Warning

Improper handling poses a potential risk of death or serious injury.



Caution

Improper handling poses the risk of injury or damage to the product or other property.

Symbols



The action is prohibited.



The action is compulsory.



The power cord must be unplugged.



Danger

Handset, Battery & Charging Devices

Use the specified battery and charging devices (Accessories). Using non-specified devices may cause the battery to leak battery fluid, overheat, burst or ignite.



Do not use or store the handset, battery, Rapid Charger, Desktop Holder or In-Car Charger near fire or heat sources to avoid high temperatures. It may cause the battery to leak, overheat, burst, smoke, ignite or distort.



Battery

To prevent battery leakage, overheating, bursting, ignition, electric shock, or equipment failure, do not:



- Use excessive pressure to force the battery into place.
- Disassemble or modify the battery.
- Get the battery wet.
- Dispose of the battery in fire.
- Solder the battery directly.

- Short-circuit the positive and negative poles of the battery with metallic items. Also, carry or store the battery with metallic items such as a necklace that may accidentally touch the terminals.
- Do not apply excessive force on the battery.
- Install the battery in the handset aligning the positive and negative poles correctly.

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse them immediately with clean water and consult a doctor as soon as possible. Failing to do so may cause the loss of eyesight.





Warning

Handset, Battery & Charging Devices

Do not apply a strong impact to the battery or charging devices. It may cause the battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, or cause other equipment to fail or start a fire.



Do not use the devices in a place where there may be ignition or explosion. Using these devices in places such as a filling station where there is an inflammable atmosphere such as from propane gas, petrol fumes, or coal, dust, metal, etc., may result in an explosion or fire.




Do not place the devices in a cooking vessel such as a microwave oven or pressure cooker. This may cause the battery to leak battery fluid, overheat, burst or ignite, or may cause the handset or charging devices to overheat, smoke, ignite, or cause damage to circuits.



Keep the devices away from direct sunlight or high temperatures. Using the devices under direct sunlight or in a car in hot weather may cause the battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, distort or break. Also, a part of the outer case may overheat and burn the skin.



If you notice something unusual such as an abnormal sound, smoke or smell, remove the devices from their power sources as indicated below and contact Customer Service ( P 30-46). Be careful not to burn or hurt yourself when removing them.



- Handset: Turn the handset off then remove the battery.
- Rapid Charger: Disconnect the plug from the AC socket.
- In-Car Charger: Disconnect the plug from the cigarette lighter socket.

Handset

Do not use the handset while driving. Doing so may interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop your vehicle at a safe place before using the handset. Breaking the law may result in punishment.



Do not disassemble or modify the handset. This may result in fire, bodily injury, electric shock, or equipment failure. Contact Customer Service (1-800-P 30-46) for check-up, adjustment or repair of components other than specified in this guide.



Do not swing the handset by the hand strap. Doing so may cause bodily injury, equipment failure or breakage.



Do not direct infrared signals into eyes. This may affect the eyes. Directing infrared signals to another infrared device may cause its malfunction.



Do not point the light close to someone's eyes. Avoid staring at the light when lit. This may cause damage to the eyes or accidents.



Turn off the handset near electronic devices. The handset may affect the operation of these devices.



Examples of electronic devices in this category include:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators, other medical electronic equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.

Consult with the manufacturer or sales agent of the medical device about the radio wave effects.

Turn off the handset in areas where usage is prohibited. The handset may affect the operation of medical or other electronic devices. Follow the rules of the hospital or health care facility for handset usage. Breaking the law may result in punishment.



If you hear thunder while using your handset outdoors, turn the handset off, and move to a safe place immediately. There is a risk of lightning or electric shock.



If you have a weak heart, be careful with the settings of call vibration or speaker volume.



If you are wearing a medical electronic device, do not place the handset in a breast pocket or inner pocket. If you use the handset near medical electronic devices, the magnet in the handset may cause them to malfunction.



Hold the handset away from your ear and keep enough distance with it when you talk in the handsfree mode with the speaker. It may affect your hearing.



Battery

If charging the battery is not completed within its appropriate charging time, stop charging. Otherwise the battery may leak, overheat, burst, or ignite.



If you notice something unusual such as an abnormal smell, overheating, change in colour or distortion, remove the battery from the handset. Do not use the battery and contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46). Otherwise the battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.



If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, rinse immediately with clean water. Failing to do so may result in inflammation of the skin.



If the battery is leaking or smells strange, immediately move it away from any heat sources. Failing to do so may result in fire or bursting by igniting the leaked battery fluid.

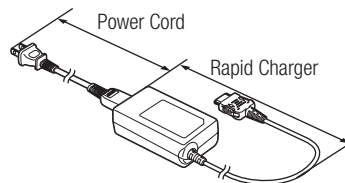


Charging Devices

Do not use the devices other than specified by Vodafone for use with the handset. Using the devices with other products may cause fire or electric shock.



Use the specified socket and voltage. Using a charging device with a non-specified socket or voltage may cause fire or equipment failure.



- Rapid Charger AC100 V to 240 V
The power cord included with the product is exclusively for use in Japan. Do not use it outside Japan.
Vodafone is not liable for any problems resulting from charging outside Japan.
- In-Car Charger DC12/24 V (only for cars with negative earth).



Do not disassemble or modify a charging device. Doing so may result in fire, bodily injury, electric shock, or equipment failure. Contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46) for check-up, adjustment or repair of components other than specified in this guide.



The In-Car Charger is only for cars with negative earth. Never use it in cars with positive earth. This may cause fire.



If the power cord becomes damaged, stop using it and contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46). Continuing to use it may cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Use only the specified fuse to replace the fuse of the In-Car Charger. Using it with non-specified fuses may cause fire or equipment failure.



When using a charging device, to prevent overheating, ignition, bursting, fire, electric shock, or equipment failure, do not:



- Get charging devices wet.
- Touch a charging device, power cord, or AC socket with wet hands.
- Charge a wet battery pack.
- Place a charging device in an unstable place while charging. Cover or wrap the charging device with cloth or futon.
- Use the Rapid Charger or Desktop Holder in a very humid place.
- Short-circuit the charging terminals or connector terminals while a charging device is connected to an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket, or touch the charger or connector terminals with any part of your body.
- Plug too many devices into one socket.

If fluid such as water seeps in, immediately unplug from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket. Never attempt to repair it yourself. Contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46). Continuing to use it may cause electric shock, smoke, or fire.



Wipe any dust off the plug. Failure to do so may cause fire.



When plugging the Rapid Charger into an electric socket, do not allow it to touch metal and also be sure to plug the charger securely. Otherwise this may cause electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



If you hear thunder, unplug the Rapid Charger from the AC socket. Failure to do so may cause fire, injury or electric shock.



Handset Use near Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc". (Association of Radio Industries and Business, March 2001).

Do not use or carry the handset within 22 cm of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator. Pacemakers and defibrillators may be affected by radio waves.



Turn the handset off in crowded areas such as on a train during the rush hour. Someone using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator may be near you. Pacemakers and defibrillators may be affected by radio waves.



Observe the following inside hospitals and health care facilities.

- Do not take the handset into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU), or coronary care units (CCU).
- Keep the handset turned off in hospital waiting rooms or wards. There may be electronic medical devices near you.
- Follow rules set by individual hospitals or health care facilities which prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.



If a medical electronic device other than an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator is used outside a hospital or health care facility, consult with the manufacturer or sales agent about the radio wave effects.





Caution

Handset, Battery & Charging Devices

Do not keep these devices in a dusty or humid and high temperature place. This may cause equipment failure.



Do not place the devices on an unstable surface or it may fall and cause injury or equipment failure.



If the user is a child, the parent should teach the child how to handle the device safely. Also, watch to make sure the device is being properly used. Failing to observe instructions may cause injury.



Keep the devices away from infants. They may mistakenly swallow the devices or sustain injuries in other ways.



Handset

If you use the handset in a car, in rare cases it may affect electronic equipment in the car, depending on the type of car. Consult with your car dealer that there are sufficient magnetic protection measures. Otherwise, driving may become unsafe.



Do not close the phone with an object such as the hand strap inserted between the keypad and display. Doing so may cause damage to the phone.



Do not place magnetic cards near the handset or clamp them in the fold of the handset. Magnetic data on cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, or floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



Do not get the handset wet. Using the handset, wet from liquids, may result in overheating, electric shock or equipment failure.



Depending on your physical characteristics and other conditions, skin irritations, a rash or eczema may develop in some rare cases. In such cases, stop using the handset immediately and consult a doctor.



Part		Material	Surface Finish
Outer Case	Sub Display Side, Battery Side	PC/ABS Resin	Acrylic UV Cured Coating
	Battery Cover, Front Cover, Screw Covers (Near Speaker)	ABS Resin	Acrylic UV Cured Coating
Front Case (Main Display and Keypad Sides)		PC/ABS Resin	Acrylic UV Cured Coating
Back Side Logo Plate		Aluminium	Anodized aluminium (Alumite) finish
Infrared Port		Acrylic Resin	—
Lamp Lens, Light Lens		PC Resin	—
Front Camera Lens, Rear Camera Lens, Main Display Screen, Sub Display Screen		Acrylic Resin	Acrylic UV Cured Resin
Screw Covers (Main Display), Rubber Pad (tip of the operation side)		Silicon Rubber	—
Macro Switch		Polyacetal Resin	—
Multi Selector		ABS Resin, PC Resin	Chrome Plating (Base: Nickel)
Chrome Plating (Base: Nickel)		ABS Resin	Chrome Plating (Base: Nickel)
Soft Key (left)/Message Key, Soft Key (right)/Vodafone live! Key, Menu/Task Menu Key, Camera Key, Clear/Back Key, Start/Call log Key, Keypad, ✕Key, #/Manner Mode Key, Power/End/Hold Key		PC Resin	Acrylic Urethane UV Cured Coating
▲/Light Key, ▼/Camera Key		PC Resin	—
Hinge Caps		ABS Resin	—
Earphone Jack, External Connector, miniSD Memory Card Slot Cover		Elastomer Resin	—
Logo Badge		Urethane Acrylic Resin	—
Screws (in Battery Compartment)		Iron	Trivalent Chrome Chromate Finish
Charging Terminals		Phosphor Bronze	Gold Plating

Do not sit down with the handset in your back pocket. Also, do not place heavy objects on the handset. Doing so may cause equipment failure or damage.



Do not leave the handset for long periods of time in a location where bright light enters the camera lens. Light entering through a lens is concentrated and may cause fire or equipment failure.



Watch out for broken glass if the display or camera lens gets damaged. Touching broken glass parts may cause bodily injury.



Do not pour fluids or put objects into the miniSD memory card slot or USIM card slot. Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or equipment failure.



When inserting a miniSD Card, slide the card into the slot and press it in until it is securely fastened. Do not release immediately. When removing the card, press the card with your finger. When the card ejects, hold it with your finger to keep it from popping out.



Point the miniSD Card slot away from your face when removing the card. If your finger is removed abruptly, the miniSD Card may eject abruptly and cause bodily injury.



Battery

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. This may cause fire or environmental destruction. Tape over charger terminals and bring it to a Vodafone Shop or follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.



Charging Devices

Do not use the In-Car Charger while the engine is not running. This may cause the car battery to run down.



Do not place heavy objects on the power cord. This may cause electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



After charging completes, unplug from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket. Failure to do so may cause fire or equipment failure.



Before cleaning, always unplug the device from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket. Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



When unplugging a charger from an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the power cord. This may damage the power cord and cause fire or electric shock.



General Notes

When Using

- This handset is exclusively for use in Japan. It cannot be used outside Japan.
 - As the handset uses radio waves, it cannot be used where signals are weak or when the handset is out of the service area. Moving to such places during a call may cause the call to be disconnected.
 - Do not disturb others when using the handset in public places.
 - Move to a safe place before using the handset while walking.
 - On rare occasions, using the handset on public transportation such as a train, may affect the vehicle's electronic equipment.
 - Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of the handset data. Please keep separate records of Phone Book data, images or sounds.
 - The handset is a radio station as stipulated by Japanese Radio Law. Your handset must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- The time appearing on the handset may not be completely accurate.
 - Observe the following to avoid calls not being connected or excessive noise being heard.
 - Keep away from extremely cold places such as in frozen storage. The handset may not operate properly.
 - Keep away from metal furniture. Signals may be blocked.
 - Keep away from magnetic field or where magnetic waves are emitted (near electric appliances, AV or OA equipment such as computers, microwave ovens, speakers, TV's, radios, facsimiles, fluorescent lights, word processing devices, electric heaters, inverter air-conditioners, magnetic cookers, etc.).
 - Under the influence of strong magnetic or electric fields, noise may become louder, or calls may become unavailable. In particular, using a microwave oven has the potential to adversely affect the handset.
 - If you are near a broadcasting or radio station and receiving excessive noise, try moving around. If the signals from the station are too strong, the handset may not function.
 - When a vehicle is passing by, you may hear noise.

- If you use the handset near a landline, TV or radio, the handset may affect the operation of these devices. Use the handset as far as possible from these devices.

- **Be Aware of Eavesdropping**

The handset employs digital signals and it is difficult to intercept these signals. However, if a method beyond ordinary means is taken, eavesdropping by a third party may occur.

Eavesdropping:

A third party receives the content of radio communication with another receiver intentionally or accidentally.

Using the Handset in a Vehicle

- Do not use the handset while driving. Doing so may interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Breaking the law may result in punishment.
- Stop your vehicle in a safe place before using the handset.
- If you use the handset in a car, in rare cases it may affect electronic equipment in the car, depending on the type of car. Consult with your car dealer that there are sufficient magnetic protection measures. Otherwise, driving may become unsafe.

Using the Handset in an Aircraft

Never turn on and use the handset in an aircraft. Doing so may interfere with flight safety and cause an accident. Breaking the law may result in punishment.

General Use

- Do not allow the devices to become wet. The handset, battery, charging devices are not water-proof. Do not use them in very humid places or in the rain. When carrying the handset in your shirt pocket, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause equipment failure. Failure caused by the equipment becoming wet is not covered by the warranty and the equipment may not be repairable. Even if repair is possible, the repair will be for a fee.
- Clean with soft dry cloth. Wiping with a wet cloth may cause equipment failure. Also, wiping with alcohol, thinner, benzene or liquid soap may cause decals to fade or other discolouration.
- Clean connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab occasionally. Dirty connectors may cause poor contact and the handset may get turned off. Also, dirty connectors may prevent proper charging.

- Do not place the handset near the airflow of an air-conditioner. Sudden temperature changes may cause condensation and this may corrode internal parts.
- Do not keep the handset in a place where extreme force may be applied. Placing the handset in a bag with many other items, or sitting down with the handset in your pocket may damage the display or internal circuit boards and may cause equipment failure.
- Power Key, Keypad, etc. or the battery may become warm during a call, video call, or while charging. This is normal if it is not extremely hot.
- The operating temperature range is from 5 to 40 degrees Celsius and the humidity range is from 35 to 85 percent.
- If the handset battery is removed or if the handset is left with a low battery charge for a long period, the data or settings you saved may be lost or altered. Vodafone is not liable for any damages incurred by loss or alteration of data in such cases.
- Keep the headset connector cover, External Connector covers and miniSD Memory Card slot cover closed when not in use. Failing to do so may cause dust or water to seep in and cause equipment failure.

Handling the Camera

If you break the law while using the handset, you may be liable to prosecution under various laws or regulations (such as the Public Nuisance Laws).

Copyrights

Music, images, computer programs, databases, other copyrighted materials and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplicating these materials is permitted only for personal purposes or use at home. If duplication (including conversion of data types), modifications, transfer of duplicates or distribution on networks are made beyond the above limits without permission of the copyright holders, this constitutes “Literary Piracy” and an “Infringement of Copyright Holder Rights” and compensation for damages may be charged or a criminal action for reparations may be filed. Use the data, duplication features and camera functions observing the copyright laws.

SAR Certification Information

This handset meets the MPHPT’s technical standards regarding radio wave absorption by a human body. These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close

to a human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for this handset is 0.609 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MPHPT testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MPHPT's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

MPHPT : <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>

ARIB : <http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html>
(Japanese only)

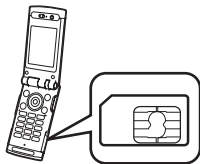
- * The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

Getting Started

Main Features

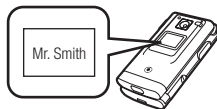
USIM Card Compatible

A USIM Card contains information including your handset phone number. Insert the USIM Card in a USIM Card compatible Vodafone handset.



Sub Display

Shows missed calls or new message. Also functions as a Camera view finder.



Manner Mode

Set Vibrator, etc. to not disturb others.



Phone Book

Stores up to 500 phone numbers and 500 e-mail addresses in the handset. Also stores phone numbers and e-mail addresses on the USIM Card. The number of Phone Book entries that can be stored on a USIM Card varies depending on the USIM Card used.

Video Call

Make video calls with other video call compatible handsets to view the other party while talking on the phone.

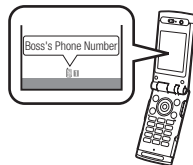


Camera

Capture still, sequential or video images.

Desktop

Create shortcut icons (Desktop Icons) for frequently used tasks to allow quick access from Stand-by Display.



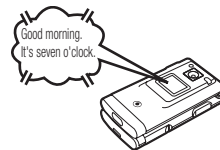
Language

Select English or Japanese for Display language.



Voice Announce

Set a voice recorded by the handset as Answer Message, Ringtone, or alarm.

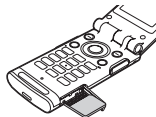


Media Player

Display images or play videos captured with the handset camera or create a Playlist to play videos in a specified order.

Memory Card

Save various data on a miniSD Memory Card.

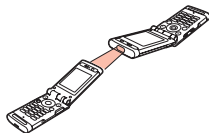


Data Folder

Save and manage data.

Infrared Data Communication

Exchange data via the infrared port.



Call Rejection

Save a phone number to reject.

Barcode Reader

Use scanned barcode information to access a URL or send a message quickly.



Messaging

Exchange messages, images or melodies with Vodafone handsets or personal computers.

Web

Obtain information from the Vodafone live! menu or the Mobile Internet.

V-Applications

Download V-applications from the Web.

Optional Services

Call Forwarding/Voice Mail

Transfer incoming calls to a pre-specified number. The Voice Mail Centre holds voice mail messages when it is specified as a forwarding destination.



Call Waiting

Answer or make a call during another call. Switch between parties.



Call Barring

Restrict all incoming/outgoing calls to domestic only or set the handset to receive or make calls only.

USIM Card

■ Before Using the USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card that contains user information and data such as your phone number. The USIM Card must be inserted before using a USIM Card compatible handset. Without the USIM Card, network connections such as making/receiving calls, messaging and web access are not available.

- Phone Book entries and SMS can be saved in the USIM Card.
- The data saved to the USIM Card can be used with another USIM Card compatible handset.
- Use the USIM Card with equipment specified by Vodafone. Using non-specified equipment may cause data loss or equipment failure.
- Do not place the USIM Card in a cooking vessel such as a microwave oven or pressure cooker. Doing so may cause the USIM Card to melt, overheat, smoke, lose data, or malfunction.
- Keep the USIM Card away from infants. They may mistakenly swallow it or they may get hurt in other ways.
- Removing or inserting the USIM Card with excessive force may cause equipment failure (Excessive force may cause equipment failure. Carefully handle the card to avoid injury).

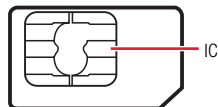
- Vodafone shall not be liable for any malfunction, after the USIM Card has been inserted into a third party IC card reader.
- The USIM Card may become warm during use. This is normal if it is not extremely hot.
- Keep the IC chip of the USIM Card clean.
(Touching the IC chip of the USIM Card may cause data loss or equipment failure. Avoid touching the IC chip of the USIM Card.)
- Do not attach labels on the USIM Card. The USIM Card is made very thin and with precision. The thickness of new labels may cause loose contact or data corruption.

■ General Notes Regarding the USIM Card

- The USIM Card is the property of Vodafone.
- The USIM Card will be re-issued for a fee if the card is lost or damaged.
- Return the USIM Card to Vodafone when your subscription is cancelled or suspended.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled for environmental conservation.
- The specifications and performance of the USIM Card are subject to change without advance notice.
- The data you save in the USIM Card may be lost or altered due to accident or failure. Keep a backup of data stored in the USIM Card. Vodafone shall not be liable for any loss or alteration of data.



USIM Card

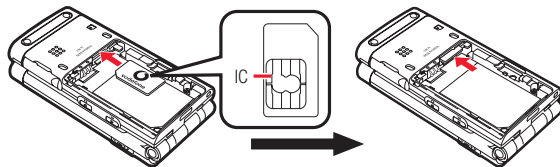


■ Inserting/Removing the USIM Card

Remove the battery before inserting or removing the USIM Card.

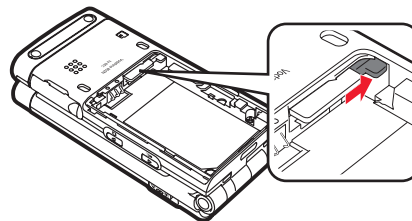
■ Inserting the USIM Card

Position the USIM Card with the IC portion facing down and insert it into the slot until it clicks into place

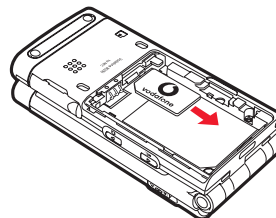


■ Removing the USIM Card

1 Press the lock to eject the USIM Card



2 Pull out the USIM Card horizontally and gently



◀ Note ▶

- Forcing the USIM Card may result in breakage of the card.
- Do not misplace the removed USIM Card.
- Do not touch or damage the IC chip when inserting or removing the USIM Card. Also, avoid touching the battery contacts.

PIN

The USIM Card has two Security Codes PIN1 and PIN2.

PIN1

PIN1 is a 4- to 8-digit code to prevent unauthorised use of Vodafone handsets by others. If **PIN1 Code Entry Set** is **ON**, you are required to enter PIN1 whenever you turn the handset power on or re-insert the USIM Card.

PIN2

PIN2 is a 4- to 8-digit code that authorises a user to access on-line services.

Tip


- PIN1 and PIN2 are set to "9999" by default.
- PIN1 and PIN2 can be changed.

Releasing PIN Lock

If PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, the current PIN1 or PIN2 becomes invalid. This only allows access to limited functions. To release a PIN lock, enter a PUK Code.

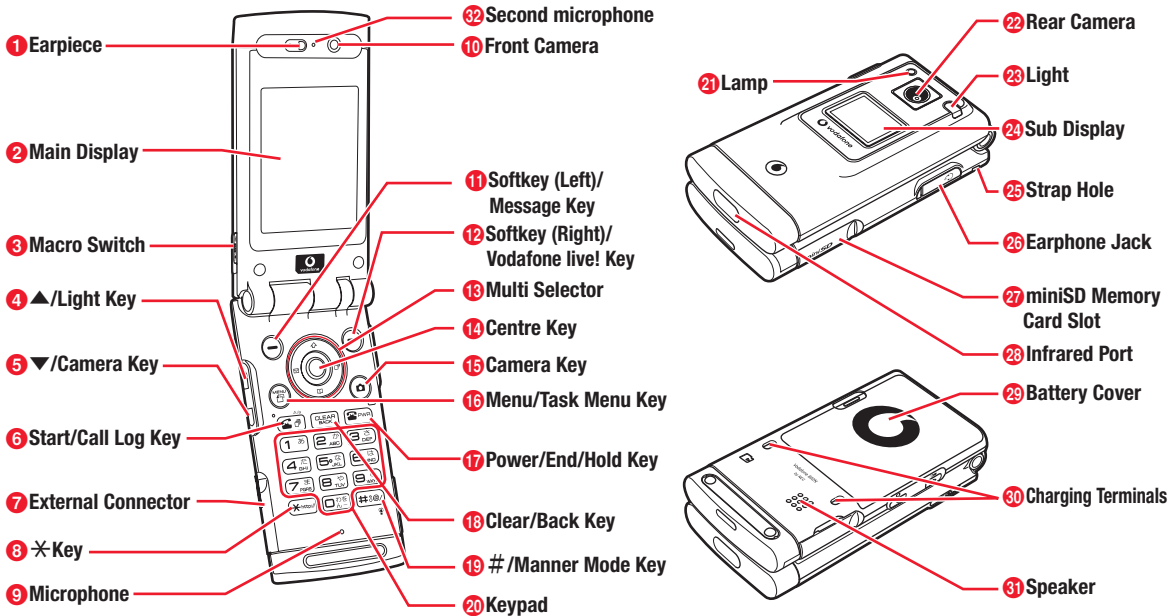
For details on PUK Code, contact Customer Service ( P 30-46).

Note

- **If a PUK Code to unlock PIN1 is entered incorrectly ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked. Once USIM Card is locked, all operations are blocked.**
- **If a PUK Code to unlock PIN2 is entered incorrectly ten times consecutively, no operations requiring PIN2 can be performed.**
- **Write down PUK Code for future reference.**
- **To unlock USIM Card lock, certain procedures must be followed. Contact Customer Service ( P 30-46).**

Handset Parts & Functions

Handset



1 Earpiece**2 Main Display****3 Macro Switch**

Switch to the Close-up mode for scanning text or barcodes.

4 ▲/Light Key

Turns the light on/off. Increases volume level during a call.

5 ▼/Camera Key

Use as shutter release. Decreases volume level during a call.

6 Start/Call Log Key

Initiates/answers a voice call. Shows Redial or toggles between upper and lower cases.

7 External Connector

Connect external devices such as Rapid Charger or In-Car Charger.

8 * Key

Enters *, pre-defined phrases such as http:// or pause (p).

9 Microphone**10 Front Camera**

Use to capture self-portraits in photo/video modes.

11 Softkey (Left)/Message Key

Opens options menus or activates a function indicated at the lower left of Main Display or open the Messaging menu in standby.

12 Softkey (Right)/Vodafone live! Key

Opens options menus or activates a function indicated at the lower right of Main Display or access Vodafone live! in standby.

13 Multi Selector

Search or select a menu item or Phone Book entry, move the cursor, scroll the screen or adjust the volume.

a Left/Inbox Key

Moves the cursor to the left or displays Received Messages menu.

b Up/Shortcut Key

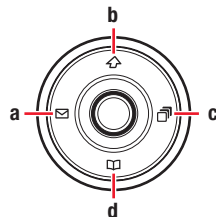
Moves the cursor up or displays Shortcuts menu.

c Right/Call Log Key

Moves the cursor to the right or displays Redial menu.

d Down/Phone Book Key

Moves the cursor down or displays Phone Book menu.

**14 Centre Key**

Perform an operation indicated at the lower-centre of Main Display.

15 Camera Key

Displays Camera menu.

16 Menu/Task Menu Key

Displays Main Menu or Task Menu.

17 Power/End/Hold Key

Turns the handset on/off, places an incoming call on hold or ends a call.

18 Clear/Back Key

Returns to the previous screen, deletes characters or places a call-in-progress on hold.

19 #/Manner Mode Key

Enters symbols, sets Manner Mode or activates Record Message (message recorder) while receiving a call.

20 Keypad

Enters phone numbers or characters.

21 Lamp

Illuminates while charging or flashes when receiving calls or messages.

22 Rear Camera

Captures images with the camera facing outward.

23 Light

Use when capturing images or scanning.

24 Sub Display

Use when the handset is closed. Messages or indicators show operation status.

25 Strap Hole

Attach a hand strap.

26 Earphone Jack

Connect the Handsfree Headset (available as an optional accessory).

27 miniSD Memory Card Slot

Insert a miniSD Memory Card (commercially available).

28 Infrared Port

Infrared interface for data transmission.

29 Battery Cover**30 Charging Terminals**

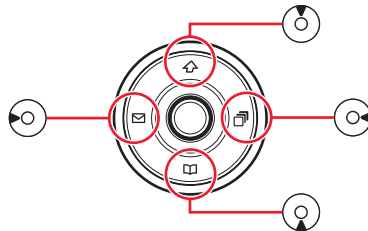
For charging with Desktop Holder.

31 Speaker**32 Second microphone**

Picks up sounds during a handsfree call, video capturing or Picture Voice recording.

Multi Selector

Use Multi Selector to select an item, move the cursor or scroll the screen.

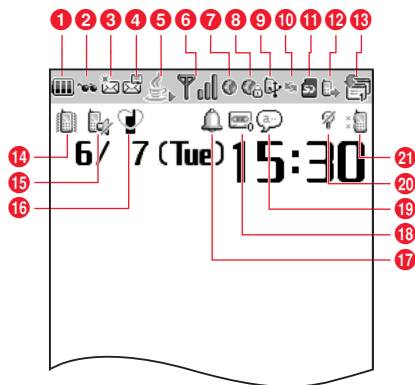


The following notation is used:

- Press (Up) or (Down)
- Press (Left) or (Right)
- Press (Up), (Down), (Left) or (Right)

Display Indicators

Main Display

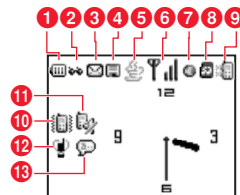


- 1 Battery Strength
- 2 Secret Mode
Secret Only Mode (Flashing Indicator)
 - All Lock ON
 - PIM Lock ON
 - Keypad Dial Lock ON
 - Keypad Dial Lock and Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode concurrently ON
 - Keypad Dial Lock and PIM Lock concurrently ON





















- 3 Unread Message
 - Received Messages full
 - SMS full on the USIM Card
 - SMS full on the USIM Card and Unread Messages remain
 - SMS full on the USIM Card and Received Messages full
- 4 Messages stored on the MMS Mail Server
- 5 V-application Activated
 V-application Paused
- 6 Signal Strength (more bars indicate a stronger signal)
 / 圏外* Out of the Service Area (the handset is currently out of the service area)
* Appears when Display Language is Japanese.
- 7 Accessing Vodafone live! services
 - (Grey) Packet transmission (no data to send/receive)
 - Packet transmission in progress (sending data)
 - Packet transmission in progress (receiving data)
 - (Blue) Packet transmission in progress (Connecting/disconnecting)
 - Establishing PDP Context
 - Disconnecting Packet transmission
- 8 SSL connection (Secure Socket Layer)
- 9 USB Cable connected
- 10 Infrared Transmission in progress
- 11 miniSD Memory Card inserted
 Wrong miniSD Memory Card inserted

- 12 Voice Call in progress
 - 64K connection in progress
 - Video Call in progress
- 13 Single Task Activated
 - Multiple Tasks Activated
- 14 Incoming call/video call Vibrator alert ON
 - Incoming message Vibrator alert ON
 - Incoming call/video call/message Vibrator alert ON
- 15 Incoming call/video call Ringtone muted
 - Incoming message Ringtone muted
 - Incoming call/video call/message Ringtone muted
- 16 Manner Mode ON
- 17 Alarm ON (Alarm set for today. Disappears after the set time has passed.)
 - Alarm ON (Alarm set for after today. Disappears after the set time has passed.)
- 18 Record Message (message recorder) ON (number of recorded messages indicated in the lower right corner)
- 19 New messages stored at Voice Mail Centre
- 20 Lighting (backlight) OFF
- 21 Side Key Guard ON

Sub Display



- 1 Battery Strength
- 2 Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode ON
 - All Lock ON
 - PIM Lock ON
 - Keypad Dial Lock ON
 - Keypad Dial Lock and Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode concurrently ON
 - Keypad Dial Lock and PIM Lock concurrently ON
- 3 Unread Message(s)
 - Received Messages full
 - SMS full on the USIM Card
 - Unread Message and SMS full on the USIM Card
 - Received Messages full and SMS full on the USIM Card
- 4 Messages stored on the MMS Mail Server
- 5 (Blue) V-application Activated
 - (Grey) V-application Paused

- 6  Signal Strength (more bars indicate a stronger signal)
 /  * Out of the Service Area
* Appears when Display Language is Japanese.
- 7  Accessing Vodafone live! services
-  (Grey) Packet transmission (no data to send/receive)
 Packet transmission in progress (sending data)
 Packet transmission in progress (receiving data)
 (Blue) Packet transmission in progress (Connecting/disconnecting)
 Disconnecting Packet transmission
- 8  miniSD Memory Card inserted
 Wrong miniSD Memory Card inserted
- 9  Side Key Guard ON
- 10  Incoming call/video call Vibrator alert ON
 Incoming message Vibrator alert ON
 Incoming call/video call/message Vibrator alert ON
- 11  Incoming call/video call Ringtone muted
 Incoming message Ringtone muted
 Incoming call/video call/message Ringtone muted
- 12  Manner Mode ON
- 13  New messages stored at Voice Mail Centre

Battery & Charger

Before Using Battery & Charger

- The handset comes with a rechargeable lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries do not have memory effects and therefore can be recharged without fully draining the battery.
- Charge the battery before using the handset for the first time or if the handset has not been used for a long time.
- Even if the handset is not used for a long time, charge the battery at least every six months. If the battery has not been used for a long time, it may become unable to be fully charged even after charging is completed and operating time may be reduced.
- Avoid charging battery in the following conditions:
 - When the ambient temperature is below 5°C or over 40°C
 - A humid or dusty place or an unstable surface (may cause malfunction)
 - Near a radio (signals from the handset may cause noises)
- The battery or the charger may become warm during charging. This is normal if they are not extremely hot. However, if they become extremely hot, stop charging immediately and contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

- Do not plug too many devices into one socket. It may cause overheating and result in fire.
- Do not keep a battery uncharged for a long time. Charge the battery once every six months while not in use. Otherwise the battery may become unusable.
- The battery is a consumable item. If the battery runs out much sooner than usual, replace it with a new one.
- Do not dispose of batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over charger terminals and bring it to a collection point for recycling batteries or to a Vodafone Shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.
- Lithium-ion batteries are valuable and recyclable resources.



Note

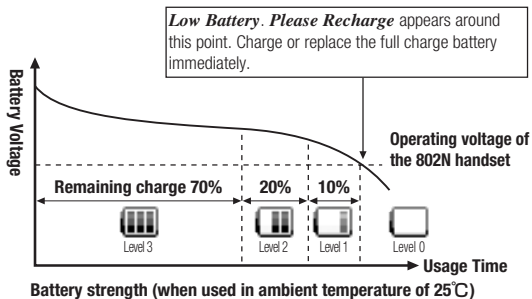
- Use the specified battery and charging devices.
- Insert the battery into the handset before charging. The handset cannot be charged and powered on without the battery.
- The flashing red Lamp indicates a battery failure. Contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).
- If *Charger failure Stop charging*. appears on the Main Display, turn the handset off, remove the battery from the handset. Then, recharge the battery. If charging fails again, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

- **Unplug the charger from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket if you do not intend to use it for a long time.**

Battery Level

Battery strength can be checked with the Battery Level indicators shown on the Main Display and Sub Display.

The Battery Level indicator varies as shown: Check the indicator to know when to charge or replace the battery.



Level 3: Full charge left

Level 2: Low charge left



Level 1: Empty


Level 0: The handset will stop working in 60 seconds


■ Checking the Battery Level by the Tone and Image


Perform the following steps to check the battery level using a large image and tones.

The image disappears after three seconds.

Press  and select  **Settings** → **Other Settings** → **Battery Level**

 Three beeps: Sufficient charge left

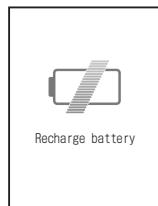
 Two beeps: Low charge left

 One beep: Empty

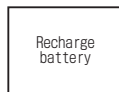
■ When the Battery Runs Out

Recharge battery appears and the battery alarm sounds for ten seconds.

The handset powers itself off after one minute. Charge the Battery.



Main Display



Sub Display

◀ Tip ▶

- **To stop the battery alarm**

Press any key other than the side keys. After stopping the alarm, be sure to turn the handset off before charging the battery.

- **When the Battery runs out during a call**

The alarm beeps during a call. End the call, turn the handset off and charge the battery. If the call is continued, the call will be disconnected in approximately 20 seconds.

- **While in Manner Mode**

The battery alarm does not sound but an image appears. However, the alarm sounds while in Original Manner Mode with Voltage Alarm set to **ON** and Ring Volume set to other than **Silent**.

◀ Note ▶

- **The Battery Level indicator provides an approximate estimate of charge remaining.**
- **Vibration mode functions even during charging. Please turn off the vibrator to prevent the handset from falling.**

■ Battery Life

Depending on the operating environment or use of the handset, battery life can become shorter.

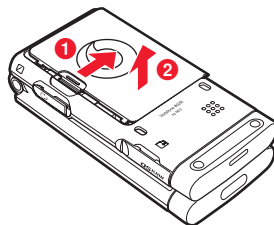
- The battery may drain quickly if:
 - The handset is used or kept in extremely low or high temperatures (operating temperature range should be from 5°C to 40°C)
 - Calls are made in a weak signal area or the handset is in standby out of the service area

- The battery is not fully charged due to dirty charging terminals on the handset, battery or charger (loose contact due to dirty charging terminals results in abnormal charging)
- The battery drains faster when:
 - Running V-applications
 - Camera, Access Reader or Barcode Reader is used continually
 - Playing videos or melodies
 - Light is used frequently or kept on for a long period
 - Keypad is used continually, such as using V-applications or composing messages
 - Infrared transfer is performed frequently
 - Handset is repeatedly opened and closed
- As the battery drains faster under the following settings, change the settings to reduce the battery drain:
 - An Original Animation is set as Stand-by Display
 - The Power Saver Mode for Lighting is set to **OFF** or Brightness setting in Display Light menu is set to **Level 3**

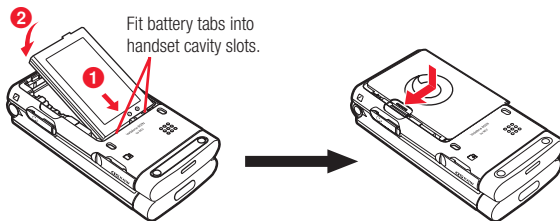
■ Inserting/Removing the Battery

■ Inserting the Battery

- 1 Press and slide the Battery cover then 2 lift out



2 Insert the battery and close the cover



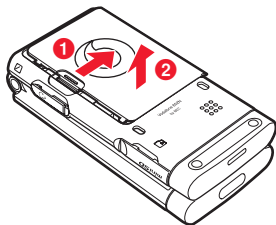
◀ Note ▶

- Do not apply excessive force on the battery when installing it. Doing so may damage the charging terminals of the handset.

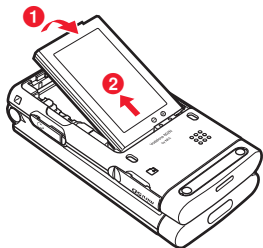
Removing the Battery

Disconnect the handset from the charging devices and turn off before removing the battery.

- 1 Press and slide the Battery cover then 2 lift out

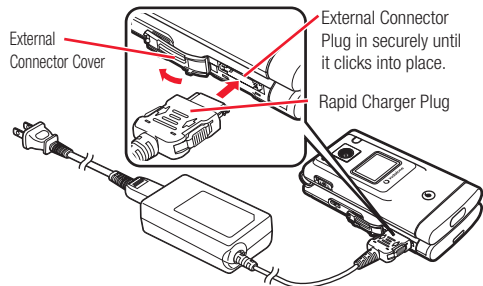


- 2 Lift the battery to remove

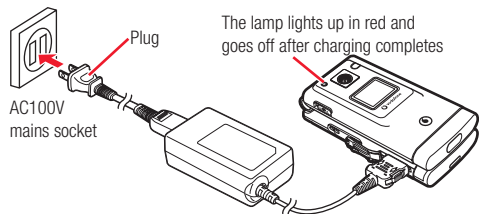


Charging with the Rapid Charger

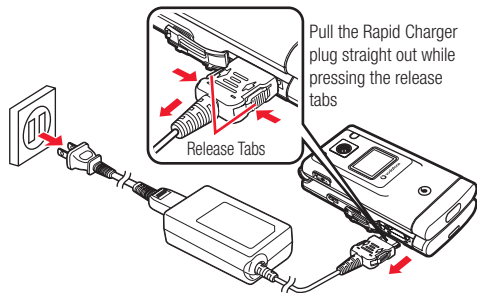
- 1 Flip open the external connector cover and insert the Rapid Charger plug into the external connector



- 2 Insert the power cable plug into an AC100V mains socket



- 3** After charging completes, disconnect the Rapid Charger plug from the handset then disconnect the power cable plug from the AC mains socket



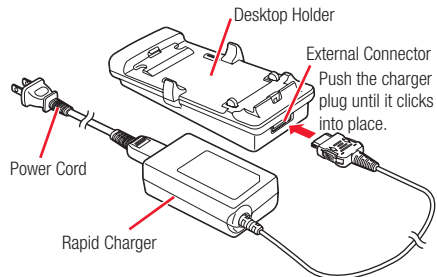
Tip

Charging time

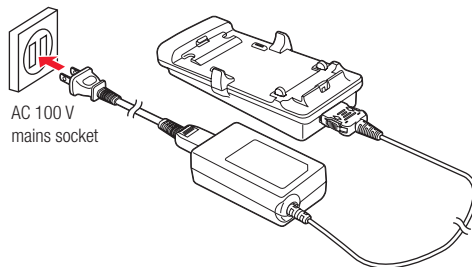
The battery charging time is approximately 120 minutes when the handset is OFF, and varies depending on the temperature. Charging takes longer while the handset is ON.

Charging with the Desktop Holder

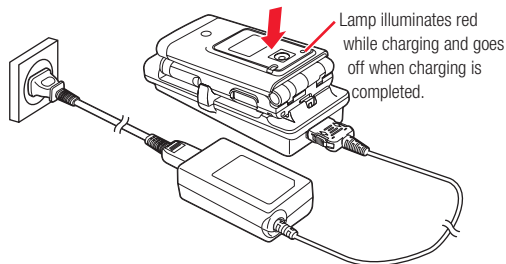
- 1** Plug Rapid Charger to Desktop Holder



- 2** Plug Power Cord into an AC 100 V mains socket



- 3 Put the handset on Desktop Holder and push the handset into place**



- 4 Remove the handset from Desktop Holder and unplug Power Cord from the socket**

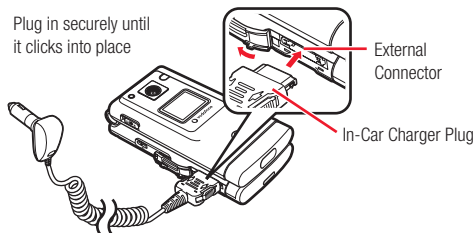
Tip

Charging time

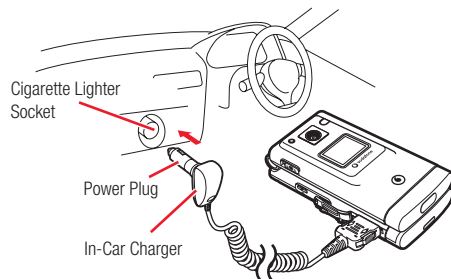
The battery charging time is approximately 120 minutes when the handset is OFF, and varies depending on the temperature. Charging takes longer while the handset is ON.

Charging with the In-Car Charger

- 1 Flip open the external connector cover and insert the In-Car Charger plug into the external connector**

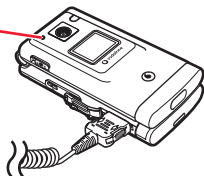


- 2 Connect the plug into a cigarette lighter socket**

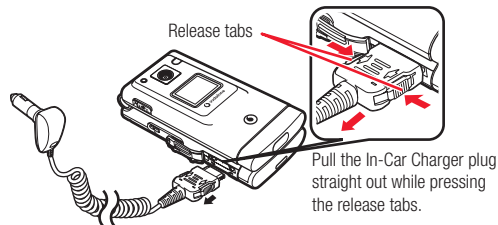


3 Start the car engine and check to see if the Lamp illuminates in red

The Lamp goes off after charging is complete



4 After charging completes, disconnect the In-Car Charger plug from the handset then disconnect the power plug from the cigarette lighter socket



Tip

• Charging time

The battery charging time is approximately 120 minutes when the handset is OFF, and varies depending on the temperature. Charging takes longer while the handset is ON.

• When using the In-Car Charger

For using the In-Car Charger, refer to the In-Car Charger User Manual. When charging with the In-Car Charger, please use an In-Car Holder to hold the handset securely.

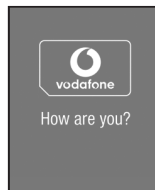
Note

Do not charge in a car under direct sunlight in high temperature.

Turning the Handset On/Off

Turning the Handset On

- 1 Open the handset
- 2 Press  for 2+ seconds



Stand-by Display
(in standby)

Tip**Turning the handset on for the first time**

Retrieve network information after turning the handset ON for the first time (ⓘ "Network Settings" in "Vodafone live!").

If the PIN1 Code is set

PIN1 is required every time the handset is turned on (ⓘ "Setting PIN Codes" in "Handset Security").

Note

Use both hands to open the handset gently. Applying excessive force may cause damage.

Turning the Handset Off

Press  for 2+ seconds


Setting the Clock

Some functions are not available until the clock is set. Set the Clock before using the handset.

Default Setting Not Set


1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Clock* → *Time and Date*

2 Enter year, month, day, and time using the 24-hour system

Use  to move the cursor.

3 Press **Set**



Tip**To correct a number**

Use  to move the cursor to the number and reenter the number.


Setting Home Area

Set the time difference from Greenwich Mean Time.

Default Setting GMT+9:00 (the time difference between Tokyo or Seoul and GMT)

① Press  and select  *Settings* → *Clock* → *Home Area Settings*

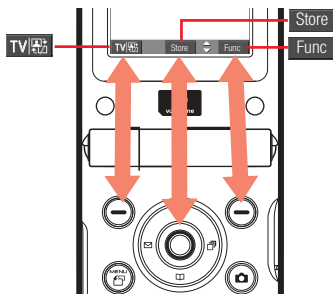
② Select a time difference

Highlight the time difference and press  **Detail** to view major cities with the time difference.

Keys & Menu

Softkeys

Each Softkey corresponds to a function/action indicated at the bottom of Main Display (Softkey area). Press the corresponding Softkey or Centre Key to select/execute the item/task.

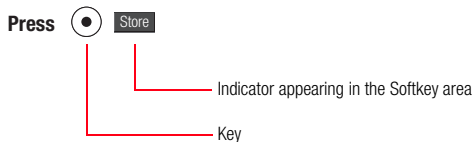


The following notation is used:

- To execute **TV** → Press (Left)
- To execute **Store** → Press (Centre Key)
- To execute **Function** → Press (Right)

Softkeys

This guide uses the following notation for Softkey operations:



Navigating the Menu

STEP 1 Opening the Main Menu and Selecting a Main Menu Item

In standby, press (Centre Key) to access the Main Menu.

Press (Directional Key) to move the pointer to a Main Menu item and press (Select) to open a menu item.



Stand-by Display
(in standby)



Main Menu

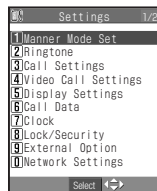
Main Menu Item	Description
V-Appli	Access saved V-applications, change settings, etc.
Vodafone live!	Access Web or the Mobile Internet.
Media Player	View or play an image, video, or melody.
Messaging	Create new messages or view sent/received messages.
Camera	Select a mode to capture an image or video, or play/edit saved images.
Data Folder	Folders in seven types appear. View or use saved files.
Accessory	Launch applications such as Schedule, Calculator or the Bar Code Reader.
Phone Book	The Phone Book menu opens. Save or search contacts or customise the settings.
Settings	Customise the handset by selecting setting options.

STEP 2 Accessing a Menu Item and Sub Menu Item

From the menu, select an item then a sub item.

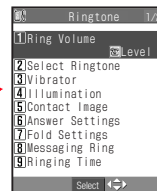
Example: Accessing Ringtone menu

Settings Menu



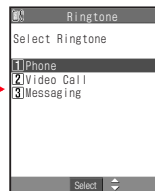
Press (Highlight **Ringtone**) → **Select**

Ringtone Menu



Press (Highlight **Select Ringtone**) → **Select**

Select Ringtone Menu



Tip

- To close a menu**

Press to close the menu and return to standby.

If more than one task is running, another task becomes active.

- To cancel the current operation**

Press to cancel any current operations and return to standby or the previous screen. A message may appear, informing you the setting will be cancelled. Press

to return to the previous screen.

■ Selecting Menus/Items

This guide uses the following notation for selecting menu as described in STEP 1 and STEP 2:

Press  and select  *Settings* → *Ringtone* →
Select Ringtone



"Highlight" instructs you to move the cursor () or a frame to select an item.

■ Selecting Menus/Items with Keypad

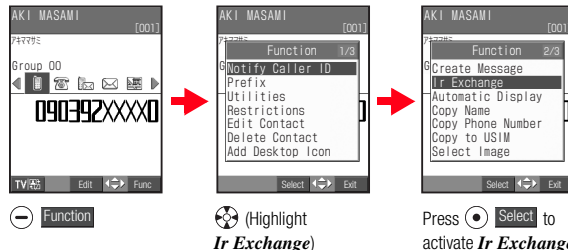
Press a corresponding number key for quick access to numbered menu items.

■ Using the Function Menu

To open Function menu, press  (Right) when **Func** appears in the lower right corner. The Function menu allows quick access to various tasks.

- To launch a task, highlight the item and press  **Select**.
- Use  to scroll pages when a menu continues to another page. Check the upper right corner to confirm current page and total pages.

Example: Selecting and launching *Ir Exchange* from the Function menu of Contact Details



■ Notation of Function Menu Selections

This guide uses the following notation to explain Function menu selection:

Select *Ir Exchange* from the Function menu

The above sentence summarizes the following steps:

- ① Press  **Function**
- ② Use  to highlight *Ir Exchange*
- ③ Press  **Select**

■ Menu Display Set

■ Changing Menu Guidance setting

Set to **OFF** to hide the explanation of the highlighted menu item at the top of the Main Menu.

Default Setting 



1 Press  and select  *Settings* →
Display Settings → *Menu Display Set* → *Guidance*

2 Select an option

■ Changing Menu Display

Select List or Detail for Menu Display





Default Setting  List

1 Press  and select  *Settings* →
Display Settings → *Menu Display Set* →
Menu Display

2 Select an option

■ Using Softkeys, Centre key and the Multi Selector for Messaging or Web

The following keys work differently in Messaging or Web operation:

-  Select an item at the cursor or use the key as the softkey  (Left) to select an option displayed in the bottom left corner of the screen. No option is displayed in the bottom centre.
-  Select an option at the cursor on the Function menu.
-  Return to the previous screen.

Multitasking


The nine items on the Main Menu are categorized into the following four Task Groups. Activate one task per Task Group to launch up to three tasks simultaneously.

Task Group	Main Menu Items
V-Application	V-Applications
Web/Messaging	Vodafone live! and Messaging
Accessory	Media Player, Camera, Data Folder, Accessory, and Phone Book
Settings	Settings

Multiple Tasks cannot be launched when a video call or infrared transfer is in progress. See "Multitasking Combination" in "Appendix" for details.

■ Launching New Tasks

Perform the following steps to launch the second or third task while the first task is running:

- 1 Press  to open the Main Menu
- 2 Select a menu item from a group with no tasks running

Tip

To launch a second task from the same group

- ① Select a second task
- ② A confirmation appears
- ③ Choose **YES** to end the running task to launch the new task

Switching Tasks

Open the Task Menu and select another task.

1 Press for 1+ seconds to open the Task Menu

To open the Task Menu from the Main Menu

- ① Press  to open the Main Menu
- ② Press  

2 Select another task

Ending Tasks

1 Press for 1+ seconds to open the Task Menu

To open the Task Menu from the Main Menu

- ① Press  to open the Main Menu
- ② Press  




2 Highlight a task

3 Press and choose **YES**

Tip

To end all running tasks at once

Perform the following steps to end all tasks and return to standby:

- ① Press  for 1+ seconds to open the Task Menu
- ② Press   and choose **YES**

Handset Codes

Security Code, **Centre Access Code** and **Network Password** are required to use/access some functions/services.

Security Code

Security Code is initially set to "9999" or the 4- to 8-digit number selected at initial service subscription and is required for using some handset functions.

- Security Code can be changed from the handset.
- The entered Security Code is masked with underlines "_".
- An error message appears if Security Code is entered incorrectly.

Centre Access Code

Centre Access Code is the 4-digit number you selected at initial service subscription and is required to set optional services from a landline or to subscribe to Web fee-based information services.

- Centre Access Code cannot be changed from the handset.

To change Centre Access Code, you must follow certain procedures. For details, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

Network Password

Network Password is the 4-digit number you selected at initial service subscription and is required to set Call Barring service with the handset. If the code is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring service settings will be locked. In this case, Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For details, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

- Network Password can be changed from the handset.

Note

- **Do not forget these Codes. If you forget any of the codes, you must follow certain procedures. For details, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).**
- **Do not reveal your codes to others. Vodafone shall not be liable for damages caused by misuse of the codes by others.**

Basic Handset Operations

Making a Call

For making a video call, see "Video Call".

1 Enter the entire phone number (starting with the area code for landlines)

2 Check the phone number and press 

3 Press  **to end the call**

Tip

- **To correct a number**

Use  to move the cursor and press  to delete the number at the cursor.

- **Making calls showing/withholding your Caller ID**

① Perform Step 1

② Select **Notify Caller ID** from the Function menu and select **OFF** or **ON** (to cancel the setting, select **Cancel Prefix**).

The following numbers can be dialed before the phone number:

- "186": To show your Caller ID
- "184": To withhold your Caller ID

- **When the Line is Busy**

Press  to disconnect the call and try later.

- **Available Operations during a Call**


For adjusting earpiece volume, recording the other party's voice, or putting a call on hold, see "Operations during a Call".

- **When the handset is closed while dialling or during a call**

The dialling or call ends. Change this setting in **Fold Settings**.


.....

Making an International Call

A separate subscription is required to use this service (no application fees or basic monthly charges are required). For more information, contact Customer Service ( P 30-46).

Perform the following steps to make an international call:

① Enter the international access code "0046010", country code and the phone number (if a number starts with a zero, omit the zero.)

② Check the phone number and press 


Alternatively, instead of entering the international access code, enter "+" by pressing

 for 1+ seconds in standby.

Perform the following steps to use the default international prefix saved in Prefix:

① Enter the country code and the phone number* omitting the first zero

② Select **Prefix** from the Function menu and select **國際発信** (international access code)

③ Check the phone number and press 

* Do not omit the first zero when making a call to a landline phone in Italy.

Function Menu on the Phone Number Entry Screen

The following options are available from the Function menu:

Function Menu Item	Description
Notify Caller ID	Select whether to send or withhold your Caller ID
Prefix	Select a prefix from a list
Create Contact	Save the entered phone number to Phone Book (☎ "Phone Book")
Create Message	A new message window opens (✉ "Sending Messages")
Select Image	Select an image to send to the other party during a video call

Making a Call from Call Logs

Redialling

1 Press or

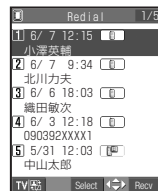
To use menus

Press and select **Phone Book** → **Call Log**

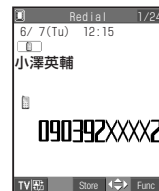
2 Highlight a phone number or name and press

To make a call while viewing details

Select an entry from Redial and open the entry details then press



Redial (Dialled calls list)



Redial (Entry details)

Tip

• Entries saved in Redial

The entries of the 30 most recent voice calls, video calls, packet communication, or 64K data communication are saved.

• If the same number is dialled more than once

Only the most recent entry is saved.

• When the caller's phone number is saved in the Phone Book

The caller's name appears on the list. To view the phone number, select the entry to open details.

• Deleting entries from Redial

To delete one or all entries, select **Delete One** or **Delete All** respectively from the Function menu of Call Log entry details and choose **YES**.

Perform the following steps to select and delete more than one entry:

① Select **Delete Selected** from the Function menu

② Select entries then press **Finish**

③ Choose **YES**

• **If Redial is empty**

A list of Received Calls opens in Step 1.

■ Dialling a Number on Received Calls List

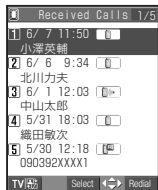
1 Press or

2 Press **Received**

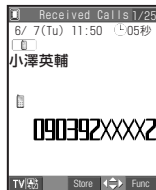
3 **Highlight the phone number or name and press**

To view details before making a call

Select the entry from Received Calls and open the entry details then press



Received Calls list



Entry details

Tip

• Entries saved in Received Calls

The 30 most recent voice calls and video calls (including missed calls and calls answered with Record Message) and 30 entries of 64K data communications are saved. For a call without Caller ID, the reason for no Caller ID, such as **Payphone** or **User Unset**, and date and time of the call are displayed.

• When the caller's phone number is saved in the Phone Book

The caller's name appears in the list. To view a phone number, select an entry to open the entry details.

• To delete entries from Received Calls

To delete one or all entries, select **Delete One** or **Delete All** respectively from the Function menu of Call Log entry details and choose **YES**. Perform the following steps to select and delete more than one entry:

- ① Select **Delete Selected** from the Function menu
- ② Select entries then press **Finish**
- ③ Choose **YES**

• To check Ringing Time for Missed Calls

In Call Log entry details, the ringing time is displayed in seconds. Select **Ringing Time** from the Function menu to open a list of phone numbers and ringing time of missed calls to identify one-ring calls.

• If Redial is empty

The Received Calls list opens after Step 1.

Messaging Logs

Logs of sent and received messages are saved in Messaging Log. If the address is saved in Phone Book the saved name appears. If a phone number is saved in the same entry, you can make a call from the Sent or Received Address. If more than one phone number is saved, the call is placed to the first number.

1 Use to select *Messaging Log*

To access from the Main Menu

Press  and select  *Phone Book* → *Messaging Log*

To view Received Address

Press  **Received** in a list of Set Address

2 Highlight an entry and press

To select whether to send or withhold your Caller ID before dialling

- ① Select an address
- ② Select *Dialling* from the Function menu and select *Don't Notify ID* or *Notify Caller ID*

Tip

- **If more than one message is sent to or received from the same address**
Only the most recent time and date are saved.

- **To delete entries from the Messaging Log**

To delete one or all entries, select *Delete One* or *Delete All* respectively from the Function menu of entry details and choose **YES**. Perform the following steps to select and delete more than one entry:








- ① Select *Delete Selected* from the Function menu
- ② Select entries and press  **Finish**
- ③ Choose **YES**

- **If Sent Address is empty**

The Received Address list opens in Step 1.




Call Log & Message Log Indicators



- Outgoing or incoming communications
 -  Outgoing or received voice calls
 -  Outgoing or received video calls
 -  Sent packet
 -  Sent or received 64K data exchange
- Missed calls
 -  Voice or video call answered with Record Message
 -  Missed voice call
 -  Missed voice call (unchecked)
 -  Missed video call
 -  Missed video call (unchecked)
 -  Missed 64K data communication
 -  Missed 64K data communication (unchecked)

- Call rejection
 -  Rejected voice call
 -  Rejected voice call (unchecked)
 -  Rejected video call
 -  Rejected video call (unchecked)
- Sent/received messages
 -  Sent, undelivered or received MMS
 -  Sent or received SMS
 -  Undelivered SMS

■ Function Menu of Logs

Open Function menu from log entries. Available functions differ by log type.

Function Menu	Description
Notify Caller ID ¹	Select whether to send or withhold your Caller ID.
Prefix ¹	Select a prefix from a list.
Dialling ²	Make a voice or video call.
Create Contact	Save a phone number or e-mail address from the history to the Phone Book ( "Phone Book").
Add Desktop Icon	Add an entry item to Stand-by Display as a Desktop Icon for quick access. After selecting a Desktop Icon of a phone number, press  or  to make a voice or video call. Select a Desktop Icon of an e-mail address to open a new message window.
Delete One	Available for Entry Details. Delete the displayed entry.
Delete Selected	Select and delete multiple entries.
Delete All	Delete all entries in the current log.




Function Menu	Description
Create Message	A new message window opens ( "Sending Messages").
Select Image ¹	Select an image to send to the other party during a video call.
Release Call Reject List ¹	Enter the Security Code to put the phone number on/off the Call Reject List ( "Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls" in "Handset Security").
Ringling Time ³	The ringing time when the call arrived is displayed in seconds.

1 Appears only in Redial or Received Calls.

2 Appears only in Sent Address or Received Address.

3 Appears only in Received Calls.

Answering Voice Calls

- 1 When a voice call arrives, press  or  **Answer** to answer the call
- 2 Press  to end the call

Tip

When using Any Key Answer

Press any key from to , , , (Left), , , or the side key to answer the call ("Manner Mode" or "Answer Settings" below).

Display for Incoming Voice Calls

If the caller sends Caller ID, the caller's phone number appears. The caller's name appears if the phone number is saved in a Phone Book.

If Caller ID is withheld, the reason *User Unset*, *Payphone*, or *Not Supported* appears.

Answer Settings

Customise Answer Settings to *Quick Silent* to mute the Ringtone by pressing to , , , (Left), , , or the side key while receiving a call, or change to *OFF* to answer a call only with or .

Default Setting Any Key Answer

- 1 Press and select **Settings** → **Ringtone** → **Answer Settings**
- 2 Select an option

When Manner Mode is set and Answer Settings is set to *Quick Silent*, a call is answered by pressing any key, the same as Any Key Answer.

When You Cannot Answer the Phone

Putting a Caller on Hold

Perform the following operations to place a caller on hold.

An outgoing message informs the caller you are unable to answer the call at the moment.

- 1 Press while receiving a call

The caller is placed on hold

- 2 Press or **Answer** when you are able to take the call

Tip

To disconnect a call while the caller is on hold

Press

Note

Callers are charged for the time they are put on hold.

Recording Messages to the Handset

While receiving a call, perform the following to turn on *Record Message* and set Manner Mode ("Manner Mode"). Record Message records up to 20 seconds per caller's message.

Press **#*06/** or the side key  while receiving a call


Tip

For details on playing or deleting a message or changing the settings of Record Message, see "Advanced Functions".

Note

If five messages are already recorded, only Manner Mode is set and the handset cannot record any more messages.

Other Tips for When You Cannot Answer a Call

Set Record Message ( "Advanced Functions") on, in advance. Record Message answers a call automatically and records up to five caller messages.

Use Optional Services such as Call Forwarding or Voice Mail to forward a call to a specified phone number or to store a message at the Voice Mail Centre when a call is unanswered. For details, see "Optional Services".






Rejecting Calls

Call rejection allows you to bar an incoming call while receiving.

Select *Call Rejection* from the Function menu while receiving a call

Preventing Nuisance Calls

The 802N handset offers various options to prevent nuisance calls such as one-ring calls.

Item	Description
Ringing Time	Set to mute ringtone until the specified time elapses. Also, set to exclude received calls with ringing time shorter than the set time from Received Calls. Identify one-ring calls ( "Ringtone" in "Sounds").
Restrictions	Restrict incoming calls from specific phone numbers saved in a Phone Book to prevent nuisance calls. Dialling also can be restricted ( "Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls" in "Handset Security").
Reject Unknown	Reject incoming calls from phone numbers not saved in the handset or the USIM Card Phone Book ( "Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls" in "Handset Security").
Call Setting Without ID	An incoming call without a Caller ID can be rejected ( "Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls" in "Handset Security").
Reject Call List	Rejecting incoming calls made from phone numbers saved in the Reject Call List ( "Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls" in "Handset Security").

Tip

If contradictory options are set concurrently

If *Call Acceptation* in Restrictions is set for a phone number and the phone number is also saved in the Reject Call List, Restrictions take precedence.



Operations During a Call

Adjusting Earpiece Volume Level



1 Press  or  for 1+ seconds during a call

2 Adjust volume level

To raise the volume level



Press  or the side key 

To lower the volume level

Press  or the side key 

Tip

To adjust the earpiece volume level in standby

- ① Press  or  for 1+ seconds in standby
- ② Perform Step 2

Putting a Caller on Hold

1 Press  during a call

2 Press ,  **Answer**, , or  **CLEAR BACK** to return to the call

Voice Recorder




Make a recording of up to 20 seconds on the handset during a call or in standby. A new recording overwrites the existing message.

Press the side key  for 1+ seconds during a call

Five seconds before recording ends




The recording automatically ends after a beep sounds when remaining recording time is five seconds

To cancel recording

Press  **Stop** or  **CLEAR BACK**, or press the side key  for 1+ seconds

Tip

• To play Voice Recorder

- ① Press  and select  **Accessory** → **Play/Eraser Message**
- ② Highlight **Voice Recorder** and press  **Play**

• To delete Voice Recorder

Press  **Erase** during playback and choose **YES**.

Switching to Handsfree

Select *Handsfree ON* from the Function menu during a call

To switch from Handsfree to a normal call

Select *Handsfree OFF* from the Function menu

Communicating Simultaneously

Allows simultaneous sessions as follows:

Current sessions	Examples of Sessions available simultaneously
A voice call	Access the Web Send/receive MMS or SMS Perform packet communication
A video call	Receive SMS
Web browsing ¹	Make/answer a voice call Receive SMS
Packet communication ¹	Make/answer a voice call Send/receive SMS ²

¹ SMS informs arrival of MMS at the mail server.




² Unable to send SMS messages while Vodafone live! menu is active.

Receiving Calls/Data while Communicating

The availability of simultaneous sessions depends on the type of communications.

Answering a Voice Call during Web Access or Packet Communication



Answer the call without disconnecting the current communication session. After the call ends, the previous screen returns.

- 1 Press  or  **Answer** when a voice call arrives
- 2 Press  to end the call


Opening Another Session while Communicating

Use another channel to communicate without disconnecting the current communication session.

Messaging during a Voice Call

- 1 Press  and select  **Messaging** → **Create Message during a call**
- 2 **Create and send a message**

■ Making a Voice Call during Web Access/Packet Communication

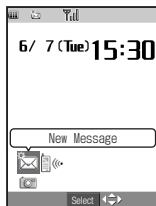
- 1 Press  for 1+ seconds during Web Access/Packet communication and select *Stand-by Display*
- 2 Make a voice call

Missed Calls/New Messages

■ Checking Missed Calls/New Messages



Desktop Icons indicate you have missed/unchecked calls, messages or alarms.

- 1 Press  in standby





- 2 Select a Desktop Icon



To read a new message

Select  and press  **Select**



To display Missed Calls

Select  and press  **Select**



To play a recorded message

Select  and press  **Select**



To play a Voice Mail message

Select  and press  **Select**

To check a missed alarm

Select  and press  **Select**

◀ Note ▶

To erase missed calls/messages/alarm icons, press  for 1+ seconds in standby. The Desktop Icons are not erased when the handset power is turned off but  is erased when the battery is removed.

■ Checking Information Notice with Handset Closed

The side key tone (Information Notice) sounds or the lamp lights up to notify of a missed call or new message.

Press the side key  with the handset closed

If there is a missed call or new message

Two short tones sound twice

The lamp blinks for five seconds. The lamp colour depends on Phone or Messaging setting in Illumination (if there is a missed call and a new message, the lamp flashes, alternating colours according to the set colours)

If there is no missed call or new message

Three short tones sound

The lamp blinks in **Colour 12** for about five seconds

**Tip**

When the Language is set to *Japanese* and Information Notice Settings is set to *Voice*

After a tone sounds, voice informs that you have “不在着信あり” (Missed Call), “新着メールあり” (New Message), “簡易留守録あり” (Record Message), or “留守番電話あり” (Voice Mail) (Japanese only).

■ Turning Side Key Tone ON/OFF for Closed Handset (Information Notice Settings)

Activates or mutes the side key tone (Information Notice) to inform you have missed calls or new messages while the handset is closed.

Default Setting ON

1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Ringtone** → **Information Notice Settings**

2 Select an option

**Note**

If the Language is set to *Japanese*, Voice notification is also available.

Call Duration

Check the call duration of the last call or all calls. The all calls duration can be reset to 0s (zero).

■ Checking the Duration

Press  and select  **Settings** → **Call Data** → **Call Duration**

■ Meaning of Items in Call Duration

The following items are displayed:

- **Last call duration:** Indicates the approximate length of the last call.
- **All calls duration:** Indicates the accumulated length of all calls since the last reset. Digital indicates the sum of video calls and 64K data communications.
- **Last reset date:** Indicates the last date and time when the total duration was reset.

Tip



The limit of the time to be displayed

Up to "199 hours 59 minutes and 59 seconds" can be displayed. After this limit, the counter restarts from "0" (zero).

Note

The duration shown is approximate and may not be accurate.

Resetting All Calls Duration

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Call Data* → *Reset Call Duration*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Select *Reset Call Duration* and choose *YES*

My Contact Details

Viewing My Contact Details

View your handset phone number. View your e-mail address if it is saved.

- 1 Press  then 

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  *Phone Book* →

My Contact Details


- 2 Highlight an icon to view the phone number or e-mail address

Saving/Editing My Contact Details


Save up to four phone numbers, three e-mail addresses, a postal address, and a memo in *My Contact Details*.

- 1 Press  then 
- 2 Press  *Edit*
- 3 Enter the Security Code
- 4 Select an item and save contact details


To add your name

- ① Select  and enter your family name
- ② Edit Reading if necessary
- ③ Enter your first name
- ④ Edit Reading if necessary


To add a phone number

- ① Select  and enter a phone number (including the area code)
- ② Select an icon
- ③ To add another phone number, repeat steps ① and ②

To add an e-mail address

- ① Select  and enter an e-mail address
- ② Select an icon
- ③ To add another e-mail address, repeat steps ① and ②

To add a postal code and address

- ① Select  and enter your postal number
- ② Enter your postal address

To add a memo

Select  and enter a memo


To add an image

Select  and select an image from the Data Folder

5 Press  

Other Operations Available for My Contact Details

The following operations are available using the Function menu:
Different Function menus appear depending on the highlighted icon.

Function Menu Item	Description
Edit	After entering the Security Code, edit My Contact Details
Display All Data	After entering the Security Code, view all items including items other than phone numbers and e-mail addresses
Copy Name/Copy Phone Number/Copy Mail Address/Copy Address/Copy Memorandums	Copy your name, phone number, e-mail address, postal address or memo. Copied item can be pasted repeatedly by selecting Paste
Ir Exchange	Send data to an infrared communication compatible device ( "Infrared Data Communication")
Delete Phone Number/ Delete Mail Address/ Delete Address/ Delete Memorandums/ Delete Image	Choose YES to delete a phone number, e-mail address, postal address, memo or image
Reset	After entering the Security Code, choose YES and all saved items except your handset phone number will be deleted

Manner Mode

Minding Mobile Manners

Be mindful of others when using the handset.

- Turn the handset off in a theatre or museum, etc.
- Do not disturb others in quiet places such as in a restaurant or hotel lobby.
- Follow announcements or posted instructions in trains and Shinkansen Bullet trains, etc.
- Use the handset so as not to disturb pedestrians on the streets.

■ Functions for Promoting Mobile Manners

- **Manner Mode**

Turn off ringtones and keypad sounds with the press of a single button. Besides Manner Mode, set other functions to maintain courtesy.

- **Record Message (message recorder)**

Allows callers to leave messages. Set Ringing Time of Record Message to 0 seconds to turn off Ringtone.

- **Vibrator**

The handset vibrates to notify of an incoming voice call, video call and message.

- **Ring Volume**

Set Ring Volume to Silent to mute the ringtone of a voice/video call and/or message.

- **Messaging Ring**

Mute incoming message ringtone.

- **Information Notice Settings**

Turn Information Notice Settings OFF to mute the side key tone that is set to ring while the handset is closed. Doing so enables the Sub Display to show these notifications without sounds.

- **Keypad Sound**

Set the keypad sound off.

- **Schedule, Alarm Clock and Tasks**

Set the alarm off.

The volume levels of the camera shutter, Auto Timer tone and Video Call Auto Answer tone cannot be changed regardless of any other settings.

Setting Manner Mode

Three types of Manner Mode are available. Select from Manner Mode, Super Silent and Original. See the following chart to view active settings for each Manner Mode type.

Item	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
Record Message	OFF (Unavailable) ¹	OFF (Unavailable) ¹	Customise settings ²
Vibrator	ON	ON	
Phone Volume	Silent	Silent	
Messaging Volume	Silent	Silent	
Alarm Volume	Silent	Silent	
Voice Memo Tone	ON	OFF	
Keypad Sound	OFF	OFF	
Microphone Sensitivity	Up	Up	
Low Voltage Alarm Tone	OFF	OFF	

1 To set to **ON**, set Record Message to **ON** (☰ "Advanced Functions")

2 The default settings are the same as Manner Mode.

- While in Manner Mode, the battery level tone or alert tone does not sound.
- The following tones sound in the volume set in **Phone Volume** in Manner Mode Set.
 - Alarm tone for Schedule or Tasks
 - The tone to notify of missed calls or new messages (Level 2 if the tone is set to **Step**)



- Level 1 is set for on-hold music except when **Phone Volume** is set to mute in Manner Mode Set.

Setting/Releasing Manner Mode

Press  key for 1+ seconds in standby or during a call

Tip





- **To set Manner Mode while receiving a call**

Press  or the side key  while receiving a call. Manner Mode is set and the call is answered with Record Message.

- **Indicators displayed while in Manner Mode**

 appears.


The following indicators appear according to the set options:

-  Handset vibrates to notify of an incoming call/message
-  Ringtone is muted
-  -  Record Message is activated (the number indicates the number of recordings)

■ Customising Manner Mode Settings

Select **Original** to customise the Manner Mode settings.

Default Setting Manner Mode

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Manner Mode Set*

2 Select Manner Mode type

If selecting *Manner Mode* or *Super Silent*
Set appears next to the selected type

If selecting *Original*

Proceed to Step 3

3 Customise the manner mode settings

To set Record Message

Select *Record Message* and choose *ON* or *OFF*



To set the vibrator

Select *Vibrator* and choose *ON* or *OFF*

To set ringtone volume for voice and video calls

Select *Phone Volume* and use  to adjust the volume level then press 

To set Messaging Ring Volume

Select *Messaging Volume* and use  to adjust the volume level then press 

To set Alarm Volume

Select *Alarm Volume* and use  to adjust the volume level then press 

To turn ON/OFF sounds recorded with Record Message or Voice Recorder

Select *Voice Memo Tone* and choose *ON* (sound) or *OFF* (mute)

To set Keypad Sound

Select *Keypad Sound* and choose *ON* (sound) or *OFF* (mute)

To set microphone sensitivity

Select *Microphone Sensitivity* and select *Normal* or *Up*

To set an alarm for low battery

Select *Low Voltage Alarm Tone* and choose *ON* (sound) or *OFF* (mute)

4 Press 

Entering Characters

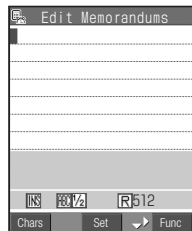
Text Entry

Enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (Full/Half Pitch*), alphanumeric characters, symbols, pictographs and smileys. However, some input modes are not available depending on the entry screen. Also, Full Pitch and Half Pitch may not be switched, or spaces or line feeds may not be entered.

Entry steps vary depending on the Input Method. This section mainly explains text entry in the default mode, Mode 1 (5-touch). For entering text using Mode 2 (2-touch) or Mode 3 (T9), see "Text Input Modes".

* double-byte/single-byte

Text Entry Window



1 Text Entry Area

2 Operation Guidance

3 Text Input Indicators

1 Text Entry Area

█ Cursor

2 Operation Guidance

▲ ▼ **CHG (change)** Appears when using converts characters

⊗ **Fix Mode** / ⊗ **Fix END** Appears when Fix Mode is available in Mode 3 (T9)

⌨ **L / U** Press to toggle between upper and lower cases

⌨ ^{LONG} **LF** Press for 1+ seconds to enter a line feed (↵)

Light Back Press the side key to return to the prior reading assigned to the same key

3 Text Input Indicators

Indicates the current mode:

/ Indicates Mode 2 (2-touch) or Mode 3 (T9)

Indicates Fix Mode in Mode 3 (T9)

/ Insert/Overwrite

/ / / Indicates the current input mode

Indicates Kuten input mode

/ Half Pitch/Full Pitch


Lower case

Remaining number of bytes

Number of bytes entered

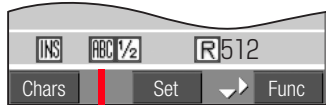
Pausing Text Entry/Edit

If a voice or video call arrives during text entry, answer the call without discarding the entry. After the call ends, the text entry window returns. If an alarm such as Schedule activates during text entry, after the alarm ends, the text entry window returns.

If  is pressed during text entry, a confirmation asking whether to end the entry appears. Choose **YES** to clear the entered text.

■ Text Input Mode

Press  **Characters** to toggle input modes.



Roman Letter*
Enter roman letters and symbols.



Number*
Enter numbers and symbols.



Kanji/Hiragana
Enter Full Pitch Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, symbols and numbers.



Katakana*
Enter Katakana and symbols.

* Half and Full Pitches input can be toggled from the Function menu.

■ Toggling between Full and Half Pitches

While in Katakana, alphabetical, or numerical input mode, toggle between Full and Half Pitches.

Select *Full Pitch* or *Half Pitch* from the Function menu

■ Toggling between Upper and Lower Cases




Switch to lower case input when entering lower case characters in a row such as "abc".

Select *Lower Case* or *Upper Case* from the Function menu



Tip

To toggle between upper and lower cases for a single character

Use  to move the cursor on a character. Each press of  toggles between upper and lower cases. However, if  does not appear even after moving the cursor over the character, upper and lower cannot be toggled.

Key Assignments

Input Mode Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Roman Letter	Number
1 あ	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ	—	1
2 か	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc	2
3 さ	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef	3
4 た	たちつとっ	タチツテトツ	GHIghi	4
5 な	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl	5
6 は	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno	6
7 ま	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs	7
8 や	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv	8
9 ら	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz	9
0 わ	わをんーわ	ワヲンーワ ¹	—	0
* help	— ²	—	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www .com .html http:// https:// vodafone.ne.jp	* .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www .com .html http:// https:// vodafone.ne.jp
#	° ° ° ° ! ?		. @ / ! ? () , - _ : ' ~ & ¥	# . @ / ! ? () , - _ : ' ~ & ¥

1 Half Pitch “ワ” is not available.

2 Pressing  switches to Kuten Input mode.

 Half Pitch only


Entering Characters in 5-touch Input Mode

This section explains how to enter characters in Mode 1 (5-touch).

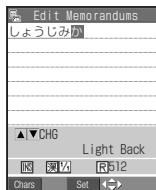
■ Entering Kanji/Hiragana









After entering Hiragana, convert it to Kanji. Hiragana can also be fixed.

Example: Entering “庄司美夏”

1 Press  **Characters** to change to Kanji Hiragana Input Mode

2 Press each key assigned to the character




- “し”: Press  twice
- “よ”: Press  three times and  (Lower Case) once
- “う”: Press  three times
- “じ”: Press  twice and  once
- “み”: Press  twice
- “か”: Press  once


To correct a character

Press  to delete a character and press the correct key

If a key is pressed too many times

A press of the side key  returns to the prior character assigned to the same key

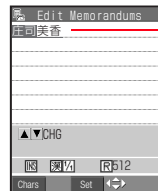
To enter the next character assigned to the same key as the one you have just entered

Press  to move the cursor to right

To fix Hiragana

Press  **Set**

3 Use  to change to Kanji



The Kanji alternatives for the first segment appears highlighted

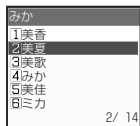
To accept the displayed Kanji

Press  **Set**

To change the range of the segment

Use  to change the range and press 

4 Use to highlight alternatives



5 Select the Kanji

6 Press Set

4

Tip

When the target Kanji cannot be found

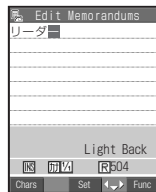
Use a different reading for the Kanji. If two or more Kanji characters cannot be converted at once, change the range to one character and convert. Use a Kuten code to find an unconverted Kanji.






■ Entering Katakana

Example: Entering “リーダー”

1 Press Characters to change to Katakana Input Mode

2 Enter Katakana




- “J” : Press  twice
- “_” : Press  four times
- “夕” : Press  once and  once
- “—” : Press  four times


To correct a character

Press  to delete a character and press the correct key

If a key is pressed too many times

A press of the side key  returns to the prior character assigned to the same key

To enter the next character assigned to the same key as the one you have just entered

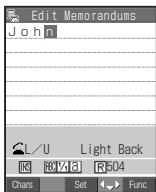
Press  to move the cursor to right

■ Entering Roman Letters

Example: Entering “J o h n”

1 Press Characters to change to Roman Letter Input Mode

2 Enter Roman Letter





Select **Full Pitch** from the Function menu

“J”: Press  once

Select **Lower Case** from the Function menu

“o”: Press  three times

“h”: Press  twice

“n”: Press  twice


To correct a character

Press  to delete a character and press the correct key

To enter the preceding character assigned to the same key

Press the side key  repeatedly until the character appears

To enter the next character assigned to the same key as the one you have just entered

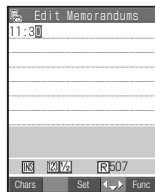
Press  to move the cursor to right


■ Entering Numbers

Example: Entering “11:30”


1 Press  **Characters** to change to Number Input Mode


2 Enter Number characters



“11”: Press  twice

“.”: Press  12 times

“3”: Press  once

“0”: Press  once

To correct a character

Press  to delete a character and press the correct key

To enter the next character assigned to the same key as the one you have just entered

Press the same key

■ Entering Symbols/Pictographs

For available characters, see the “Symbols and Pictographs” in “Appendix”

■ Entering One at a Time



1 Select *Symbols* or *Pictograph* from the Function menu

2 Select a symbol or pictograph


Tip**Entering symbols by changing from Hiragana**

Enter “きごう” in Kanji Hiragana Input Mode and convert to see alternatives, or enter names of symbols such as “かっこ (parentheses)” or “さんかく (triangle)” and convert.

Entering More than One at a Time


- 1 Select *Pictograph/Symbol Input* from the Function menu
- 2 Repeatedly press  **PI/SB** to open a list of alternatives
- 3 Select a symbol or pictograph
- 4 Repeat Steps 2 and 3 and press  to end

Tip**The order of symbol and pictograph lists**

Each press of  **PI/SB** displays *Pictograph, Full Pitch 1, Full Pitch 2* and *Half Pitch* in this order.

Entering Smileys

For available smileys, see the “Smileys” in “Appendix”

- 1 Enter “**かお (Kao, face)**” or “**かおもじ (Kaomoji, face character)**” in Kanji Hiragana Input Mode
- 2 Press  to open alternatives and select a smiley

Tip**Finding a Smiley from Its Meaning**

Enter a meaning of smiley such as “ありがとう (arigato, thanks)” or “ばんざい (banzai, cheer)”.

Entering Spaces

Select *Space* from the Function menu

Entering Line Feed



Enter a line feed  to feed a line. A line feed is counted as one character.

Select *Line Feed* from the Function menu or press



 for 1+ seconds

■ Entering Characters Using Data from Other Functions

■ Using Data from the Phone Book

- 1 Select *Quote Phone Book* from the Function menu
- 2 Select a search method and find a contact
- 3 Select an item and press  

■ Using Data in *My Contact Details*




- 1 Select *Quote Own Number* from the Function menu
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Select an item and press  

■ Using Web Memo

- 1 Select *Web Memo* from the Function menu
- 2 Select a memo




Tip

To view the entire Web Memo

To view the entire Web Memo before selecting, press  . Press  to return to the list of memos.

■ Scanning and Entering Barcode Data

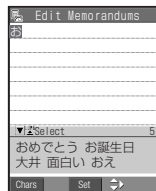
Start the Bar Code Reader from the Function menu of a text entry window and enter the scanned bar code data.

- 1 Select *Bar Code Reader* from the Function menu
- 2 Frame the barcode in the recognition area and press  to scan
- 3 Press  


■ Entering Text Using Word Prediction

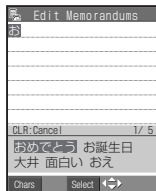
Finish a word from predicted text based on previously entered text. Word prediction is available only in Kanji Hiragana Input Mode of Mode 1 (5-touch) or Full Pitch Input Mode in Mode 2 (2-touch).

- 1 Press a key assigned a character to enter its reading

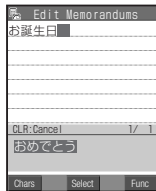


Alternative words which can be predicted from the portion already entered appear in Operation Guidance.

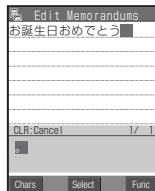
2 Press  for 1+ seconds to move the cursor to Operation Guidance when a target text string appears



3 Select the text string




4 Select subsequent text if it has been learned and is available for selection



Tip

- Prediction Alternatives**
 Prediction alternatives are text strings predicted based on previous entries. While entering a reading, text strings appear one after another in Operation Guidance.
- Learned Alternatives**
 Learned alternatives are subsequent text strings predicted based on earlier text. They appear after fixing the first segment.
- To turn off Word Prediction**
 Turn Prediction off to not show alternatives. See "Text Input Method".

Entering Text Using Kuten Codes

Use the 4-digit Kuten codes (👉 "Kuten Codes" in "Appendix") to enter characters. To switch to Kuten Input Mode, press  or use the Function menu in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 2 (2-touch). In Mode 3 (T9), switching to Kuten Input Mode is possible only from the Function menu.

1 Press to switch to Kuten Input Mode

To use the Function menu

Select **Kuten Code** from the Function menu

2 Enter a Kuten code

Text Input Modes

The 802N handset offers the following three text input methods:

Input modes	Entry Method	Entering “おはよう” (Ohayo, Good morning)
Mode 1 (5-touch)	Press a key repeatedly until the character appears.	Press five times, once, three times and three times.
Mode 2 (2-touch)	Enter the same 2-digit code number as is used to send text to a pager.	Press , , then .
Mode 3 (T9)	Press the each key assigned to a reading group just once to display character alternatives. Select the appropriate character.	Press and select “おはよう” from reading alternatives.

This section explains how to enter text using the T9 and 2-touch methods.
For switching text input methods, see “Switching Text Input Method”.

Entering Text Using the T9 Mode

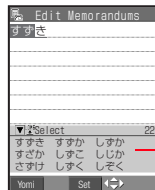
Mode 3 (T9) is available in Kanji Hiragana Input Mode and Katakana Input Mode.

Entering Text

Example: Entering “静子”

1 Press to change to Kanji Hiragana Input Mode

2 Press each key assigned to the character



Press (“**さ**” group), (“**し**” group),
 (kana mark) then (“**か**” group)

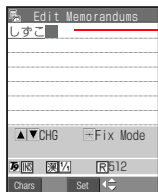
To correct a character

Press to delete a character and press the correct key

If there is no reading alternative for the entire text string

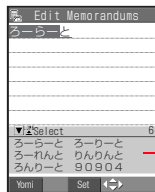
Press to shorten the text range






3 Press to move the cursor to reading alternatives and select an alternative



The selected reading alternative appears

2 Press each key assigned to the character

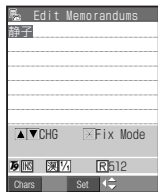


Press  ("ら" group),  ("わ" group),  ("ら" group),  ("わ" group) then  ("た" group)

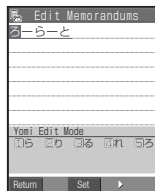
"らんらん" is not displayed as one of the predicted reading alternatives

4

4 Use to change to Kanji



3 Press



The cursor moves to the beginning and characters of the "ら" (group) appear

5 Press


■ Editing Reading Alternatives

Example: Changing "ろーらーと" to "らんらんと"

1 Press to change to Kanji Hiragana Input Mode

4 Use the keypad to specify the character

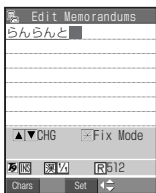
If not editing the character at the cursor


Use  to move the cursor

To end editing the reading

Press  

5 Press Set



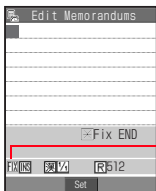
The alternative is fixed. Press  to convert


■ Entering a Reading in Fix Mode

In Fix Mode, enter the reading directly.

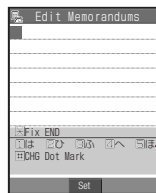
Example: Entering “はためく”


1 Press to switch to Fix Mode



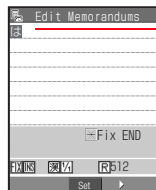
 changes into 

2 Press each key assigned to the character



Press  (“は” group) to see characters in the “は” group

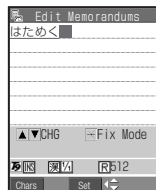
3 Use the keypad to specify the character



Press  to enter “は”

4 Repeat the steps 1 to 3 if necessary

5 Press to end Fix Mode and press Set



The reading suggestion is fixed

Key Assignments in T9 Mode

Input Mode Key	Kanji Hiragana	Katakana (Full/Half Pitch)
1 あ	あいうえおあいうえお 1	アイウエオアイウエオ 1
2 か	かきくけこ2	カキクケコ2
3 さ	さしすせそ3	サシスセソ3
4 た	たちつとっ 4	タチツテトッ 4
5 な	なにぬねの5	ナニヌネノ5
6 は	はひふへほ6	ハヒフヘホ6
7 ま	まみむめも7	マミムメモ7
8 や	やゆよやゆよ 8	ヤユヨヤユヨ 8
9 ら	らりるれろ9	ラリルレロ9
0 わ	わをんわー 0	ワワンワ*ー 0
#	While entering reading: Switches conversion alternatives with kana mark After fixing text : ` ° , 。 ・ ! ?	

* Half pitch "ワ" is not available.

Entering Text Using 2-touch Method

Press 2 digits to enter a character corresponding the number. Mode 2 (2-touch) has Full Pitch input mode and Half Pitch input mode.

Entering Text

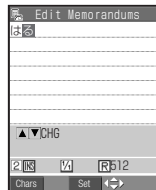
Example: Entering “はる”

1 Press **⊖** Characters to change to Full Pitch Input Mode

To switch input modes using the Function menu

Instead of pressing **⊖** Characters, select *Full Pitch* or *Half Pitch* from the Function menu

2 Use the keypad to enter a 2-digit number corresponding to the character



Press **Ⓜ** 1 2 and **Ⓜ** 3 4

Tip

To toggle between Upper and Lower cases

Pressing **Ⓜ** 2 3 toggles between upper and lower cases. Alternatively, select *Lower Case* or *Upper Case* from the Function menu.

■ Key Assignments in 2-touch Mode

● Full Pitch Input Mode

Key		Second Digit									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
		ぁ	ぃ	ぅ	ぇ	ぉ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
		㇀	㇁	㇂	㇃	㇄	f	g	h	i	j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
		㇅	㇆	㇇	㇈	㇉	k	l	m	n	o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
		㇊	㇋	㇌	㇍	㇎	p	q	r	s	t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
		㇏	㇐	㇑	㇒	㇓	u	v	w	x	y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
㇔		㇕	㇖	㇗	㇘	z					
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&				
	㇙	㇚	㇛	㇜	㇝						
8	や	(ゆ)	よ	*	#			*	
	㇞	㇟	㇠	㇡	㇢						
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
	㇣	㇤	㇥	㇦	㇧						
0	わ	を	ん	ゝ	ゞ	6	7	8	9	0	
	㇨	㇩	㇪	㇫	㇬						

* Toggles between upper (top row) and lower cases (bottom row).

■: Space

● Half Pitch Input Mode

Key		Second Digit									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
		㇀	㇁	㇂	㇃	㇄	a	b	c	d	e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
		㇅	㇆	㇇	㇈	㇉	f	g	h	i	j
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
		㇊	㇋	㇌	㇍	㇎	k	l	m	n	o
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
		㇏	㇐	㇑	㇒	㇓	p	q	r	s	t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
		㇔	㇕	㇖	㇗	㇘	u	v	w	x	y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
㇙		㇚	㇛	㇜	㇝	z					
7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&				
	㇞	㇟	㇠	㇡	㇢						
8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	*	#			*	
	㇤	㇥	㇦	㇧	㇨						
9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5	
	㇩	㇪	㇫	㇬	㇭						
0	ワ	ヲ	ン	ヰ	ヱ	6	7	8	9	0	
	㇮	㇯	ㇺ	ㇻ	ㇼ						

* Toggles between upper (top row) and lower cases (bottom row).

■: Space

Setting Text Input Method

Switching Text Input Methods

Select two or more text input methods from three text input methods, then specify a preferred method to be used in text entry windows.

Default Setting Text Input Methods to Be Used: Mode 1 to 3 (all methods)
Preferred Method: Mode 1

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *Input Method* → *Input Mode*


2 Select two or more methods and press  **Finish**

3 Select a preferred input method

 **Tip**

To change the input method temporarily during text entry

The following two ways are possible:

- Select **Change Input Mode** from the Function menu of the text entry window and select a method.
- Each press of  **Characters** for 1+ seconds switches the input methods.

Setting Prediction

Set to **OFF** if not using Prediction.

Default Setting ON

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *Input Method* → *Prediction*

2 Select an option

 **Tip**

To switch Prediction ON and OFF temporarily during text entry

From the Function menu of the text entry window, choose **Prediction ON** or **OFF**.

Setting Guidance

Set Guidance **OFF** to hide the Guidance and make the text entry area larger.



Default Setting ON

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *Input Method* → *Guidance*

2 Select an option

■ Deleting Learned Data

Delete learned data on text entry. Separately delete data accumulated using Mode 3 (T9) or Prediction, and using Kana/Kanji Change.



- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *Input Method* → *Clear Learned*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Select an item

Using Own Dictionary

Save frequently used text strings with simple readings to bring them up quickly. For example, enter only “かし (kai)” to bring up “ (株) × × 海外営業部 (kaigai eigyobu, overseas sales division)”.

■ Saving Text Strings

Save up to 100 text strings (up to 10 Full Pitch or 20 Half Pitch characters).

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Own Dictionary*
- 2 Select <New>



3 Enter a text string


4 Enter a reading

Tip


- **Readings that can be saved**
Save up to 10 Hiragana characters (“う” will be converted to Katakana “ヴ”).
- **To view the saved entry**
 - ① Perform Step 1
 - ② Select a string and view the entry

■ Editing/Deleting Dictionary Entries

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Own Dictionary*
- 2 **Highlight a text string and edit or delete the entry**

To edit
Press  **Edit** and edit the text string or reading

To delete one or all entries
Select *Delete One* or *Delete All* from the Function menu and choose **YES**

To select and delete more than one entry
 - ① Select *Delete Selected* from the Function menu
 - ② Select entries
 - ③ Press  **Finish** and choose **YES**

Editing Text

■ Correcting Text

■ Inserting Characters

1 Use  in the Insert mode to move the cursor to the character after the insertion location

2 Enter characters

■ Overwriting Characters

1 Use  in the Overwrite mode to move the cursor to the character

2 Enter a character



Tip

To toggle between Overwrite and Insert Modes
Select *Insert* or *Overwrite* from the Function menu.

■ Deleting Characters

Use  to move the cursor to the character and press 

If no character is at the cursor

The character left to the cursor will be deleted

If pressing for 1+ seconds

All characters following the cursor will be deleted

If pressing for 1+ seconds without characters following the cursor

All characters will be deleted

■ Copying/Cutting/Pasting

■ Copying/Cutting Characters


Specify the range to copy or cut. The cut or copied characters can be repeatedly pasted at other locations in the current text entry window or in another text entry window.

1 Select *Copy* or *Cut* from the Function menu

2 Use  to move the cursor to the first character of the text string and press  Start

3 Use  to move the cursor to the last character of the text string and press  End

■ Pasting Characters

- 1 Use  to move the cursor to a location to paste
- 2 Select *Paste* from the Function menu

■ Moving the Cursor to the Beginning/End of Text

- 1 Select *Jump* from the Function menu
- 2 Select an option

Phone Book

Saving Contacts to a Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Items

Stores up to 500 phone numbers and 500 e-mail addresses on the handset. Also stores phone numbers and e-mail addresses on the USIM card. The number of Phone Book entries that can be stored on a USIM Card varies depending on the USIM Card used. Phone Book entries saved on the USIM card can be used on another Vodafone handset by exchanging the card.

The following items can be saved in each Phone Book contact:

Item	Description	
	Handset	USIM Card
Name (Family/First Names)	Enter up to 32 Half Pitch (16 Full Pitch) characters (for both the first and family names)	Enter up to 24 Half Pitch (12 Full Pitch) characters (for both the first and family names)
Reading (Family/First Names)	Enter up to 32 Half Pitch characters (for both the first and family names)	Enter up to 24 Half Pitch (12 Full Pitch) characters (for both the first and family names)
Group	Classify entries into one of 20 Groups	Classify entries into one of 11 Groups
Phone Number	Store up to 4 phone numbers per entry (Enter up to 32-digits per phone number)	Store up to 2 phone numbers per entry (Enter up to 32-digits per phone number)

Item	Description	
	Handset	USIM Card
Phone Number Icon	Select an icon from 23 types per number	—
Mail Address	Enter up to 128 Half Pitch alphanumeric characters (up to 3 addresses)	Enter up to 50 Half Pitch alphanumeric characters (1 address only)
Mail Address Icon	Select an icon from 4 types per address	—
Zip Code and Address	Enter up to 7 digits for Zip code and up to 62 Half Pitch (31 Full Pitch) characters for address	—
Memorandums	Enter up to 100 Half Pitch (50 Full Pitch) characters	—
Image	Set an incoming image	—
Movie	Set an incoming video	—
Memory Number	001 to 499	—

— indicates an item that cannot be saved.

Tip

Phone Books on the handset and the USIM card

Some items such as icons, images and Memory Numbers cannot be saved in the Phone Book on the USIM card. The following are differences from the Phone Book on the handset:

- Utilities are not available
- Restrictions are not available

- Ir Exchange is not available
- A phone number cannot be selected in Automatic Answer
- A contact cannot be saved in Secret
- A vfile cannot be created and saved in Other Files in the Data Folder

- **In Memory Number 000**

By default, the phone number for Voice Mail Centre "09066517000" is saved to Memory Number 000.

- **Number of contacts to be saved in the Phone Book**

Save up to 500 contacts. However, when more than one phone number or e-mail address is saved for a contact, the number of contacts that can be saved decreases.

- **Number of images or videos to be saved in the Phone Book**

Save up to 100 images and 100 videos in the handset Phone Book.

- **To save a contact that you do not want to reveal to others**

Save a contact in Secret Mode to not reveal to others (ⓘ "Saving a Secret Contact/Schedule" in "Handset Security").

Note

Protecting Phone Book Data

If the battery is removed or left in the handset with little or no charge for an extended period of time, Phone Book contacts may be altered or lost. Accidents or malfunctions can also result in lost information. Please keep a backup copy of Phone Book data. Vodafone shall not be liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of Phone Book data.

Creating Contacts in Phone Book

Select *Phone* or *USIM* and save entry items.

1 Press and select *Create Contact*

To use menus

Press  and select  *Phone Book* → *Create Contact*

2 Select a location

3 Enter the family name

To save in the USIM card

Enter family and first names

4 Edit Reading

To save in the USIM card

Proceed to Step 7

5 Enter the first name

6 Edit Reading


7 Select and save items

To save a group


Select  then a group

If a group is not selected, the contact is automatically saved with Group 00


To add a phone number

- 1 Select  and enter a phone number (starting with the area code for landlines)
- 2 Select an icon
- 3 To add another phone number, repeat steps 1 and 2

To add an e-mail address

- 1 Select  and enter an e-mail address
- 2 Select an icon
- 3 To add another e-mail address, repeat steps 1 and 2

To add a postal code and address

- 1 Select  and enter a postal code
- 2 Enter a postal address

To add a memo

Select  and enter a memo



To add an image

Select  and select an image from the Data Folder

To add a video

Select  and select a video from the Data Folder

To save to a Memory Number

- 1 Find the Memory Number (the unused lowest number) displayed under 
- 2 Select  and enter the number if changing it



8 Press  

Tip

- **To personalize the Ringtone or Answer Message**

Use Utilities. See "Setting Utilities".

- **Memory Numbers saved from 001 to 009**

Pressing the Memory Number and  or  makes a voice or video call. This is called two-touch dialling.


- **To identify contacts by categorizing them into groups**

Change the group names to easily identify groups such as Friends or Colleagues. See "Setting Groups".

- **When a call arrives while saving or editing a contact**

Answer the voice or video call without ending the operation. After the call ends, the previous screen returns.

- **To copy Phone Book contacts between the handset and the USIM Card**



Use *USIM Operation* from the Function menu or Accessory menu ( "Using the Phone Book").

.....

- **Setting a Contact Image**

Display an image or video on the Main Display when a voice or video call arrives from a phone with a designated image or video saved with the phone number in the Phone Book. Customise the settings to not display the image.

Default Setting ON

- 1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Ringtone** → **Contact Image**
- 2 Select an option

■ Priority of Images Displayed while Receiving a Call

If an image and video are saved in a contact, the video takes precedence and the image does not open.

If different images are saved as a Contact Image in different settings, the images open in the following order:

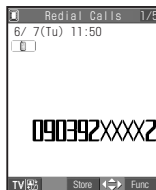
- 1 Video set as Ringtone using Phone Book Utilities
 - 2 Video set as Ringtone using Group Utilities
 - 3 Video set in Select Ringtone
 - 4 Video saved in a Phone Book contact
 - 5 Image set using Phone Book Utilities
 - 6 Image set using Group Utilities
 - 7 Image saved in a Phone Book contact
 - 8 Image set using Display Settings
-

■ Creating Contacts from Logs

Save a phone number or e-mail address from Redial, Received Calls, Sent Address, or Received Address to a Phone Book.



**Redial Entry
Details**



**Received Calls
Entry Details**



**Messaging Log
Entry Details**

■ Saving a New Contact

- 1 Open entry details in Redial, Received Calls, Sent Address or Received Address and press / **Store**
- 2 Select a location
- 3 Select *New*
- 4 Select and save items
- 5 Press **Finish**

■ Adding Items to a Saved Contact

Add items to a saved contact in the Phone Book. Overwrite an existing contact or save as a new contact leaving the existing contact intact. For steps to search a contact in the Phone Book, see "Using the Phone Book".

- 1 Open entry details in Redial, Received Calls, Sent Address or Received Address and press / **Store**
- 2 Select a location
- 3 Select an item, find a contact and open details

To add a phone number or an e-mail address to a contact in the Phone Book on the handset

- ① Select **Add**
- ② Select a search method and find the contact

To add a phone number or an e-mail address to a contact in the Phone Book on the USIM Card

- ① Select **Overwrite**
- ② Select a search method and find a contact

4 Select **Select** in the contact details




5 Select and save items

6 Complete saving


To overwrite a contact on the handset

Press  **Finish** and choose **YES**

To save as a new contact on the handset

- ① Press  **Finish** and choose **No**
- ② Select  and enter a new Memory Number
- ③ Press  **Finish**


To overwrite a contact in the USIM Card

Press  **Finish** and select **Overwrite** then choose **YES**

To save as a new contact on the USIM Card

Press  **Finish** and select **Add**

To Save a Contact after Entering a Phone Number

Enter a phone number in standby and press  **Store** to open Create Contact in Phone Book. Follow the same steps in "Creating Contacts from Logs".

Setting Groups

Change a group name "Group 01" or "Group 02" to an easily identified name such as "Friends" or "Colleagues".

1 Press and select **Manage Group**

To use menus

Press  and select  **Phone Book** → **Manage Group**

2 Select a group

To change a group name on the USIM Card

Select a group on the USIM Card (indicated with )

3 Enter a group name

Tip

• **Resetting a Group Name**

- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Highlight a group
- ③ Select **Reset Group Name** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

- **To personalize a Ringtone or Answer Message for a group**







Use Group Utilities. See “Setting Utilities”.

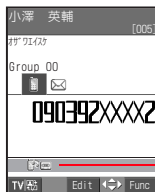
■ Group 00

Different from other groups, Group Utilities cannot be used on “Group 00” and it cannot be renamed. The Voice Mail Centre is saved in Group 00 on the handset by default. All Phone Book contacts not saved with another group are saved with Group 00.

Setting Utilities

Customise Phone Book entries so that you can answer an incoming call/ message depending on the caller. Use the Phone Book Utilities or Group Utilities to select options.

Item	Description	Indicator
Ringtone	Identify the caller by ringtone	
Illumination	Identify the caller by the flashing lamp colour	
Image	Set an incoming image by the caller	
Answer Message	Answer the caller with a preset message or an original Voice Announce	
Messaging Ringtone	Customise ringtone by the incoming messaging ringtone	
Messaging Illumination	Set lamp colour by the caller	



In contact details, indicators show which items have been set

Tip

If different items are set for the same contact

If a contact is set in both the Phone Book Utilities and the Group Utilities, the Phone Book Utilities take precedence.

■ Using Phone Book Utilities

Use Utilities from contact details. For steps to open contact details, see “Using the Phone Book”.

- 1 **Highlight the icon of a phone number or e-mail address in contact details**
- 2 **Select *Utilities* from the Function menu**
- 3 **Customise the Utilities settings**

Tip

- **After configuring settings using Phone Book Utilities**

When opening the Function menu after highlighting a phone number, etc. with Utilities set, ★ appears next to Utilities. If selecting Utilities in this case, ★ appears to set Utilities items.

- **To cancel the settings**

- ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
- ② Select an item with ★

- **To change the Utilities settings**

Cancel the settings then change them.

Note

Utilities settings are cancelled when the specified phone number or e-mail address is changed.

Using Group Utilities

1 Press and select *Manage Group*

To use menus

Press  and select  *Phone Book* → *Manage Group*

2 Highlight a group and select *Utilities* from the Function menu

3 Customise the Group Utilities settings

To set a Ringtone or Image

Select a folder from the Data Folder and select a file

To set Illumination or Answer Message

Select an option

Tip

- **After customising Group Utilities settings**

When opening the Function menu after highlighting a group with Utilities set, ★ appears next to Utilities. If selecting *Utilities* in this case, ★ appears next to set Utilities items.

- **To cancel Utilities Settings**

- ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
- ② Select an item with ★

- **To change the Group Utilities settings**

Cancel the settings then change them.

Viewing/Cancelling Utilities Settings

View Utilities settings. Select items with ★ to view a phone number, e-mail address or group with Utilities set. The Utilities can also be cancelled.

1 Press and select *Utilities*

To use menus

Press  and select  *Phone Book* → *Utilities*

2 Highlight the item with ★ and select *Check Settings* from the Function menu

3 Select other items with ★ to view contacts or groups with the item set.

If *Release?* appears

Choose *NO* to not cancel or *YES* to cancel

Tip

To cancel settings of items all at once

- 1 Perform Step 1
- 2 Highlight items with ★ and select *Release Settings* from the Function menu
- 3 Choose *YES*

Using the Phone Book

■ Making a Call from the Phone Book

■ Searching Contacts



1 Press and select *Search Contact*

To use menus



Press  and select  *Phone Book* → *Search Contact*

2 Select a search method and open a contact



To search by reading

- 1 Select *-Reading Search* and enter the reading (only the beginning needs to be entered)
- 2 Press  or  and select a contact from the list



To search by name

- 1 Select *Name Search* and enter the reading (only the beginning needs to be entered)
- 2 Press  or  and select a contact from the list

To search by phone number

- 1 Select *Phone Number Search* and enter the phone number (only partial numbers are required)
- 2 Press  or  and select a contact from the list

To search by e-mail address

- ① Select **E-mail Search** and enter the e-mail address (only a partial address is required)
- ② Press  or  and select a contact from the list




To search by Memory Number

- ① Select **Memory Number Search** and enter a 3-digit Memory Number
- ② Select a contact from the list

To search by group


- ① Select **Group Search** and select a group from the list
- ② Select a contact from the list

To search by column

- ① Select **Column Search** and press a key corresponding to a column ( for “あ” group,  for “カ” group and  for alphanumeric characters and symbols)
- ② Select a contact from the list

Tip

• Searching contacts on the USIM Card


Perform the same steps (Memory Number Search is not available). Found contacts from both the handset and the USIM Card appear in the list.  on the right side of the Contact list indicates the Contact is stored on the USIM Card.

• To list all saved contacts

- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Select a search method other than **Group Search** and press  or 

• To search for a phone number an easier way

Instead of selecting **Phone Number Search** from the Phone Book menu, enter a part of a phone number to find a contact containing the number. For example, enter “03” to find phone numbers containing “03” any where in the number.


- ① Enter a part of a phone number
- ② Press  and select a contact from the list

Making a Call

1 Select a found contact and open details


2 Highlight the phone number and make a call



Use  to highlight the phone number icon.
The phone number appears.

Contact Details

To make a voice call

Press 

To make a video call

Press  

Tip

Making a call from a list

Without opening contact details, highlight a contact on the list and press or to make a call. If a contact contains more than one phone number, the call is made to the first phone number.

Making a Call with Two-touch Dialling

Perform the following steps to make a call to a phone number saved in a contact under Memory Number 001 to 009:

- 1 Press the first digit of the Memory Number (to)
- 2 Press to make a voice call or press to make a video call

Using the Function Menu with Contacts

From contact details, use the Function menu to access various options. Different Function Menus appear depending on the highlighted item or settings.

Function Menu Item	Description
Notify Caller ID	Select whether to send or withhold your Caller ID when calling the highlighted phone number.
Prefix	Select a prefix from a list when calling the highlighted phone number.
Phone Book Utilities*	Specify Ringtone or Answer Message of Record Message per caller ("Setting Utilities").




Function Menu Item	Description
Restrictions*	Set restrictions on dialling or receiving a call to/from the highlighted phone number ("Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls" in "Handset Security").
Edit Contact	Edit contact details ("Editing the Phone Book").
Delete Contact	Delete a contact or delete specified items ("Editing the Phone Book").
Add Desktop Icon	Add an entry item to Stand-by Display as a Desktop Icon for quick access. After selecting a Desktop Icon of a phone number, press only or to make a voice or video call. Select a Desktop Icon of an e-mail address to open a new message window.
Create Message	A new message window opens.
Ir Exchange*	Send data to an infrared communication compatible device ("Infrared Data Communications").
Automatic Display*	A phone number can be made to appear every time the handset is opened. The number can be called immediately. Set Automatic Display to ON ("Display and Lighting").
Copy Name/ Copy Phone Number/ Copy Mail Address/ Copy Address*/ Copy Memorandums*	Copy your name, phone number, e-mail address, postal address or memo. Copied item can be pasted repeatedly by selecting Paste .
Release Secret*	Secret data is converted back to normal data.
Copy to USIM	Copy a contact with details open to the USIM Card or the handset.

Function Menu Item	Description
Select Image	Select an image to be sent to the other party during a video call to the highlighted phone number.
Save to Data Folder*	Choose YES to create a vfile and save it to Other Files of the Data Folder.

* The options marked with an asterisk are not available from the Phone Book on the USIM Card.


Managing Phone Book Data on the Handset and USIM Card

Copy Phone Book data between the handset and USIM Card or delete data from either. In either case, select one or more Phone Book contacts from a list and copy or delete all at once.

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *USIM Operation*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Select *Copy*
- 4 Select a copying destination
- 5 Select *Phone Book*, search for contacts and open a list
- 6 Select contacts and press  **Finish**

7 Choose *YES*

Tip

- **To copy one at a time**
Select *Copy to USIM* or *Copy to Phone* from the Function menu of the contact details and choose **YES**.
- **To delete Phone Book contacts on the handset or USIM Card**
 - ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
 - ② Select **Delete** and select *Phone* or *USIM*
 - ③ Open a list of contacts, select contacts and press  **Finish**
 - ④ Choose **YES**

Note

- *USIM Operation* is not available while another task is running.
- The handset becomes out of the service area while copying or deleting data.
- Items that cannot be saved in the Phone Book of the USIM Card will not be copied.

■ Function Menu

From the Function menu of the list of contacts opened in Step 5, the following options are available: Different Function Menus appear depending on the selected option.

Function Menu Item	Description
Start Copy	Choosing YES starts copying the selected data (same result as performing Steps 6 and 7)
Select One	Select the contact at the cursor
Select All	Select all contacts
Release One	Deselect the contact at the cursor
Release All	Deselect all contacts
Display Detail	Open the contact details at the cursor

Editing the Phone Book

■ Editing Contacts

Edit and overwrite a Phone Book contact or save as another Phone Book contact. For steps to search a contact and open contact details, see “Using the Phone Book”.

1 Open contact details

2 Press  **Edit**

To use the Function menu

Select **Edit Contact** from the Function menu

3 Perform the same steps as for saving a contact to select items and edit them

4 Press **Finish** and choose **YES** to overwrite a contact

To save as a new Contact (For Contacts stored on the handset)

① Press  **Finish** and choose **NO**

② Select  and enter a Memory Number

③ Press  **Finish**

To overwrite a contact on the USIM Card or save it as a different contact

① Press  **Finish**

② Select **Add** or **Overwrite** and choose **YES**

■ Deleting Contacts

Delete one contact at a time. Specific items saved in a contact can be deleted.

1 Open contact details

To delete a specific item

Highlight the icon of the item

2 Select *Delete Contact* from the Function menu**3 Select items****To delete a contact with its items**

Select *Delete One* and choose *YES*

To delete specific items

Select *Erase Phone Number* or *Erase Mail Address*, etc.

and choose *YES*

Video Call

Before Making a Video Call

Make Video Calls to view yourself and the other party during a call.

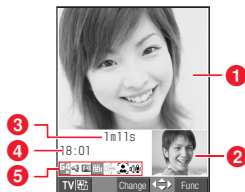
Video Calls

Transmit not only voices but also images using the 3G high-speed communication channel.

- Video calls are available between any models of video call compatible Vodafone handsets.
- Video calls employ a 64K communication speed.

Video Call Screen

- 1 Main Image
- 2 Sub Image
- 3 Call Time
- 4 Current Time



Video Call

5 Status

- 64K Communication speed
- / Voice communication in progress/failed
- / Video communication in progress/failed
- / Sending Camera Image/alternative image
- / Handsfree ON/OFF

/ / Photo Mode: Scenery/Portrait/Close-up
 / / Voice ON/Send Voice OFF/All Voice OFF

Making a Video Call

Phone Book contacts, Redial, or Received Calls can also be used to make a video call in the same way as for a voice call. Caller's and called party's Images appear once the line is connected. Turn Handsfree on or use a Handsfree Headset, an optional item, to communicate while viewing the other party's image. For a Handsfree Headset, see "Advanced Functions".

- 1 Enter the entire phone number (including the area code for landlines)
- 2 Check the phone number and press to start a call
- 3 Select *Handsfree ON* from the Function menu to use Handsfree
- 4 Press to end the call

Tip

- If a Video Call does not connect *Busy* or *Connection failed* appears.

- **To use Voice Call Auto Switch**

Use this option to automatically make a voice call if a video call fails (👉 "Video Call Settings").

- **Making calls showing/withholding your Caller ID**

① Perform Step 1

② Select **Notify Caller ID** from the Function menu and select **OFF** or **ON** (to cancel the setting, select **Cancel Prefix**).

The following numbers can be dialed before the phone number:

- "186" to show your Caller ID
- "184" to withhold your Caller ID

- **Available operations during a call**

For adjusting Earpiece volume or switching the display images, see "Operations during a Video Call".

- **When the handset is closed while dialling or during a call:**

The dialling or call ends. Change handset reactions when the handset is closed using Fold Settings.

Note

The other party's voice is heard from the speaker when using handsfree feature. Be mindful not to disturb others.


Function Menu on the Phone Number Entry Screen

See "Making a Call" in "Basic Handset Operations".

Answering a Video Call

1 When receiving a video call, press   to answer the call

To answer with an alternative image

Press   or 

2 Select **Handsfree ON** from the Function menu to use Handsfree

3 Press  to end the call




Tip

- **While using a handsfree headset**



Press the switch for 1+ seconds to answer with an alternative image. If Automatic Answer is set to **ON**, the call is automatically answered with Handsfree.

- **To put a call on hold**

① Press  (send On Hold Tone and On Hold Image to the caller)

② Press  to answer with your own image, or press  or  to answer with an alternative image

- **To answer with Record Message**

Press  or the side key  while receiving a call to set Record Message to **ON**. Manner Mode is set at the same time.

- **To disconnect a video call without answering**
Select *Call Rejection* from the Function menu.
- **To forward a video call while receiving the call**
Select *Call Forwarding* from the Function menu.

Note

- **A video call cannot be answered with Any Key Answer.**
- **The other party's voice is heard from the speaker when using handsfree feature. Be mindful not to disturb others.**

Operations during a Video Call

Settings marked with an asterisk are retained after the call.

To adjust the earpiece volume*

Press or the side key to raise the volume and press or the side key to lower the volume

To switch between Camera Image and alternative image

Press

To place a call on hold

① Press

② Press to return to the call

Press to return to the video call, or press to answer the call with the alternative image

To switch between Handsfree and a normal call

Select *Handsfree ON* or *Handsfree OFF* from the Function menu

To use Voice Memo

Press the side key for 1+ seconds (🗣️ “Voice Memo” in “Using Accessories”)

To enlarge/reduce an image to send

Each press of or increases or reduces the image size by one level.

To change Camera settings

(🗣️ Tip “To customise Camera settings”)

To change the lighting duration of the Main Display light*

① Select *Display Light* from the Function menu

② Select an option

To change the size of the Main Image*

① Select *Set Image Display* from the Function menu

② Select an option

To switch between the Rear Camera and Front Camera

Press or select *Rear Camera* or *Front Camera* from the Function menu

To switch images between the Main Image and Sub Image*

Select *Camera Image* (the other party's image is on Sub Image) or *Other Image* (your image is on Sub Image) from the Function menu

To set whether to display Call Duration during a call*

- 1 Select **Call Time Display** from the Function menu
- 2 Select an option

To view your handset phone number

Select **My Contact Details** from the Function menu



To turn the sound ON/OFF

- 1 Select **Voice ON/OFF** from the Function menu
- 2 Select **Voice ON** (with your and other party's voice), **Send Voice OFF** (without your voice) or **All Voice OFF** (without your and other party's voice)

Tip

To customise Camera settings



Select **Video Call Settings** from the Function menu and set the following items:

Item	Description
Image Quality	Select Normal , Prefer Quality (to capture objects with less movement) or Prefer Motion (to send smooth video).
Brightness*	Use  to adjust Brightness and press  Set .
White Balance*	Select an option to match the current illumination to adjust to a natural colour tone.
Colour Mode Set	Select an option. Select Normal to capture in colour.
Photo Mode	Select an option that matches with the object or conditions.


* Settings marked with an asterisk are retained after the call.

To customise Video Call settings in Settings on the Main Menu

To resize Main Image or switch between Main and Sub Images during other than a video call, do the following:

Press  and select  **Settings** → **Video Call Settings** →


Select Image Video Call → **Change Display Size** or **Main Display**.



To set Image Quality during other than a video call, select  **Settings** → **Video Call Settings** → **Image Quality**.

Video Call Settings

Selecting Video Quality

Prefer Motion is more suitable to send/receive a video with fast moving objects.

Default Setting  Normal



1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Video Call Settings** → **Image Quality**

2 Select an option

■ My Image Sending

Set this option **ON** to use video captured with the Camera Image or **OFF** to use the alternative image.

Default Setting ON



1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Video Call Settings* → *My Image Sending*

2 Select an option

■ Selecting Alternative Image or On Hold Image

Select images to be displayed while putting an incoming/outgoing call on hold or while Record Message is running, or select an alternative image to be displayed during a video call. Select an image from pre-installed files or files in the Data Folder. To use an image in the Data Folder, set the image as Display Image. For details, see “Using Image Files” in “Data Management”.

Default Setting Pre-installed for all settings

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Video Call Settings* → *Select Image*

2 Select an item

3 Select an option

6-6

☺ Tip ☺

To view a set image

After Step 2, press  *Play*. Press  to return to the previous screen.

■ Setting Voice Call Auto Switch

Set this option to **ON** to make a voice call automatically if a video call cannot be connected.

Default Setting OFF

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Video Call Settings* → *Voice Call Auto Switch*

2 Select an option



☺ Note ☺

If the other line is busy, the handset is out of the service area, or the handset is turned off, a voice call will not be made.

■ Setting Main Image

Select whether to display your own or the other party's image on the Main Display using **Main Display**. Set an image size using **Change Display Size**.

Default Setting ■ Main Display: Other Image
 ■ Change Display Size: Main Display Size


- 1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Video Call Settings** → **Select Image Video Call**
- 2 Select an item
- 3 Select an option

■ Using Video Call Auto Answer

Set this option to automatically answer a video call from a caller already saved.

■ Saving a Caller's Phone Number

Save up to five phone numbers.

- 1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Video Call Settings** → **Video Call Auto Answer**
- 2 Enter the Security Code

3 Select **Number Settings**

4 Select an entry number and select or enter a phone number

To retrieve a phone number from the Phone Book, Redial or Received Calls

- ① Highlight an entry number and select **Look-up Address** from the Function menu
- ② Select an item to look up and select a phone number

To enter directly

Select an entry number and enter the phone number



To delete a saved phone number

- ① Perform Steps 1 to 3
- ② Highlight a phone number, select **Delete One** or **Delete All** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

■ Setting Automatic Answer

Set this option to **ON** and specify ringing time in seconds before a call is answered to answer a video call automatically

Default Setting ■ ON Ringing time: Five seconds

- 1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Video Call Settings** → **Video Call Auto Answer**

- 2 Enter the Security Code**
- 3 Select *Settings***
- 4 Select an option and enter the number of seconds if setting to *ON***

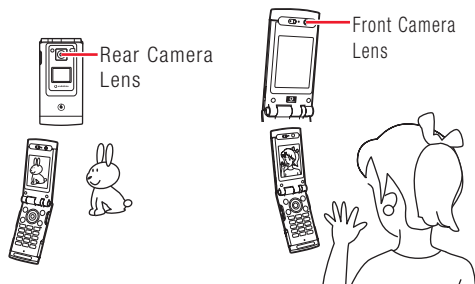
Camera

Before Using the Camera

Capture images or videos using the handset Camera. Images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MP4 format.

■ Before Capturing Images

- Fingerprints or grease on the lens reduce image quality. Clean the lens with a soft cloth.
- Images captured with even the slightest handset movement may appear blurred. Hold the handset still when capturing images. Or place the handset on a stable surface and use the Auto Timer.



■ General Notes Regarding the Camera

- The Camera employs high precision technology but some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.
- If the handset is left in a warm place prior to capturing or saving images, image quality may be affected.
- If the Camera is exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, image colours may change.
- The shutter tone and Auto Timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode.
- Insert a miniSD Memory Card before saving captured images or videos to the card.

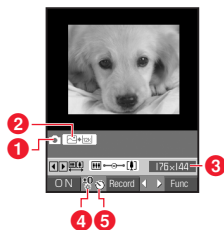
.....

■ To save an unsaved image in a low-battery status

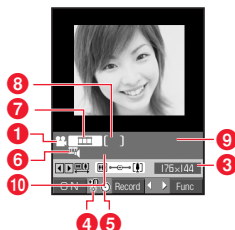
Even if images were not saved due to low battery charge, the images are protected temporarily. In this case, the next time the Camera is activated, a confirmation on whether to save unsaved images appears. Choose **YES** and select a location to save images.

.....

Main Display Overview



Capturing window in Photo Mode/Burst Mode/Picture Voice/Digital Camera Mode



Capturing window in Video Mode, Chance Capture, Long Duration Mode

1 Camera Mode

- Video Mode/Long Duration Mode
- Photo Mode
- Burst Mode
- Chance Capture
- Picture Voice
- Digital Camera Mode

2 Status of Storage Setting

- Unrestricted
- Resize (12 Kbytes)
- Resize (6 Kbytes)

3 Status in Change Display Size

1280×960 640×480 352×288 176×144 128×96

4 Brightness

-2 +2 Level -2 to +2

5 Auto Timer

(appears only when this is set)

Images to be captured/available images in Burst Mode

1/5 Appears before capturing the first out of five

6 Status of Video Type Set

- Normal
- Image
- Voice

7 Status of File Size Setting

- Messaging Attachment
- Local Playback
- appears while in Long Duration Mode

8 Status of Storage Setting

- High Quality
- Fine
- Normal

9 Capturing Duration

10 Capturing Status

Recording

Tip

If *Change Display Size* is set to *Stand-by (240 x 269)*, 1 to 3 do not appear.

Capturing Images

Image Capturing Modes

To capture images one by one, use **Photo Mode** or **Digital Camera Mode**. To capture sequential images, use **Burst Mode**. Save captured images to the handset or a miniSD Memory Card.

Images captured in **Photo Mode** and **Burst Mode** are saved in folders such as the Inbox folder of **View Photo**.

Images captured by **Digital Camera Mode** are saved in folders such as the **Digital Camera** folder of **View Photo**.

The following modes are available:

Mode	Description	Image Size (dots)
Photo Mode	Use captured images as MMS attachments or set as Stand-by Display	352×288 240×269
Burst Mode	Captures sequential images to be saved as an Original Animation or individual images	176×144 128×96
Digital Camera Mode	Captures images in sizes suitable for editing on a PC or printing	1280×960 640×480

Capturing Images

Capturing an Image


- 1 Press  and select **Photo Mode** or **Digital Camera Mode**

To use menus

Press  and select  **Camera** → **Photo Mode** or **Digital Camera Mode**



To use a Desktop Icon

Select  to open the Camera menu



- 2 Customise the settings on the Function menu (Use Column “ Function Menu before Capturing Images”)

- 3 Frame the shot on the Main Display

To use the Light

Press  ON / OFF or the side key  to turn the Light on or off

To zoom in or out

Each press of  or  increases or reduces the image size by one level (disabled for the image size of 1280 x 960)

- 4 Press  Record or the side key 

5 View the captured image

To retry recording

Press  **Cancel** or select **Cancel** from the Function menu and choose **YES**, then restart from Step 2

To make a mirror image

Select **Mirror Display** or **Normal Display** from the Function menu

To change the Display Size

Select **Display Size** from the Function menu and select an option (available only for 176 x 144 and 128 x 96 image sizes)

6 Press **Save** to choose YES and select a saving destination

To save a mirror image


Select **Mirror Save** from the Function menu, choose **YES** and select a saving location



Tip

• To capture with Auto Timer

Perform the following steps in Step 2:

- 1 Select **Auto Timer** from the Function menu and choose **ON**
- 2 Enter the countdown time in seconds
Press  **Set** to accept the current countdown time

• To switch between the Rear Camera and Front Camera

Select **Rear Camera** or **Front Camera** from the Function menu in Step 2.

• To send a captured image by Messaging

Select **Create Message** from the Function menu in Step 5. Fill the entry fields and send the message.




• To edit a captured image

Select **Effects** from the Function menu in Step 5, choose **YES** and select a saving location or choose **NO**. Select an option from the Function menu on the edit window to edit the image.

• To use a captured image as Stand-by Display


Select **Set as Display Image** from the Function menu in Step 5, choose **YES** and select a saving location. Then customise the setting.





• To capture an image with the handset folded

Use the Rear Camera to capture images with the handset folded. Press the side key  for 1+ seconds to activate the Camera. Press the side key  again. The shutter tone sounds and the captured image opens in the Sub Display. Select a saving location in Auto Save Set in advance to save images automatically after capturing. Press the side key  for 1+ seconds to deactivate the Camera.

Function Menu before Capturing Images

The following options are available from the Function menu before capturing: The displayed menu items and available options vary depending on a mode or settings.

Function Menu Item	Description
Front Camera/Rear Camera*	Switch between the Rear Camera and Front Camera ( Tip "To switch between the Rear Camera and Front Camera").
Change Camera Mode	Switch capturing modes or view captured images.
Change Display Size*	Select an image size.

Function Menu Item	Description
Storage Setting	To change the size to be attached to a message, select Resize (12K) (up to a 12 Kbyte image can be attached) or Resize (6K) (up to a 6 Kbyte image can be attached).
Brightness	Use  to adjust Brightness and press  Set .
White Balance*	Select an option to match the current illumination to adjust to a natural colour tone.
Photo Mode	Select an option that matches with the object or conditions.
Colour Mode Set	Select an option. Select Normal to capture in colour.
Shutter Sound*	Select a shutter tone from three types.
Auto Timer*	Capture with Auto Timer ( Tip "To capture with Auto Timer").
Select Frame	Select a Frame stored in Data Folder. The Frame can be changed using the Function menu after saving an image.
Access Reader	Activates a task that scans text or bar code data using the Camera ( "Using Accessories").
Bar Code Reader	
Auto Save Set*	Set to save captured images automatically. If selecting ON , select a saving location (Phone or Memory Card).
Display Size*	Zooms in the image to fit the display size.
Image Tuning*	Customise the setting if the image flickers.

* Settings marked with an asterisk are retained after closing the Camera menu.



■ Capturing Sequential Images

The following modes are available:

Auto allows capturing images automatically with a set interval.

Manual allows capturing images manually.

Customise the Burst Mode settings from the Function menu before capturing images. The settings will be retained after closing the Camera menu. Save a part or all captured sequential images as images or as an Original Animation.

- 1 Press  and select **Burst Mode**
- 2 Customise the settings on the Function menu ( "Capturing an Image")
- 3 Customise the settings for Burst Mode if necessary

To switch the operating modes

Select **Change Continuous Mode** from the Function menu and select an option

To change the number of sequential images



Select **Interval/Number** → **Shot Number** from the Function menu and enter a number

To change the interval (for Auto)



Select **Interval/Number** → **Shot Interval** from the Function menu and select an option

- 4 Frame the shot on the Main Display

To use the Light

Press  **ON** / **OFF** or the side key  to turn the Light on or off

To zoom in or out

Each press of  or  increases or reduces the image size by one level

5 Press  **Record** or the side key 

6 View the captured image

To retry recording

Select **Cancel** from the Function menu and choose **YES**, then restart from Step 2

To view an image at a time

Use  to move the frame and press  **Detail**

To select images

Use  to move the frame and press  **Select**

To select or deselect all images

Select **Select All** or **Release All** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

To make all images to mirror image

Select **Mirror Display** or **Normal Display** from the Function menu

7 Use the Function menu to save images

To save only selected images

- ① Select **Store Selection** from the Function menu, select as it is or as a mirror image and choose **YES**
- ② Select a saving location

To save all images

- ① Select **Store All** or **Store All/Animation** from the Function menu, select as it is or as a mirror image and choose **YES**
- ② Select a saving location



Tip

Available number of images and interval

The number of images to be captured or interval options offered in Step 3 vary depending on the Change Display Size setting.

Capturing Videos

Video Capturing Modes

Capture videos with sound, only moving images or only sounds. The file size varies depending on the settings. Use the available capturing duration and elapsed capturing time on the display as guidance.

Videos captured in **Video Mode** are saved in the **Inbox** folder, etc. in **View Video**. Videos captured in **Long Duration Mode** are automatically saved in the **Memory Card** folder In **View Video**. Videos

captured in **Long Duration Mode** are automatically saved in Memory Card subfolder in Videos folder.

The following modes are available:

Mode	Description	Image Size (dots)
Video Mode	Use to capture videos suitable for message attachments.	176×144 128×96
Long Duration Mode ¹	Use to capture up to about 60 minutes of video ² . A miniSD Memory Card is required for saving long video files.	

1 This mode is available only when a miniSD Memory Card is inserted.

2 Depending on miniSD Memory Card capacity.

■ Capturing Videos

1 Press and select **Video Mode** or **Long Duration Mode**

To use menus

Press  and select  **Camera** → **Video Mode** or **Long Duration Mode**



To use a Desktop Icon

Select  to open the Camera menu



2 Customise the settings on the Function menu (☞ Column “ Function Menu before Capturing Videos”)

3 Frame the shot on the Main Display

To use the Light

Press  ON / OFF or the side key  to turn the Light on or off

To zoom in or out

Each press of  or  increases or reduces the image size by one level

4 Press Record or the side key to start recording

5 Press Stop or the side key to end recording

In Video Mode


Proceed to Step 6

In Long Duration Mode

A Captured video is automatically saved and the operation ends

6 Press Play to view a captured video, if necessary

To play with Slow or start playing from a specific frame

While playing a video, press  Stop and use the Function menu to perform operations (☞ Column “ Function Menu from Paused Video”)

To retry recording

Select **Cancel** from the Function menu and choose **YES**, then restart from Step 2

To change the Display Size

Select **Display Size** from the Function menu and select an option


7 Press  **Save** and choose **YES** Edit a file name, if necessary

8 Select a saving location

Tip

• To capture with Auto Timer

Perform the following steps in Step 2:

- 1 Select **Auto Timer** from the Function menu and choose **ON**
- 2 Enter the countdown time
Press  **Set** not to change the countdown time

• To switch between the Rear Camera and Front Camera

Select **Rear Camera** or **Front Camera** from the Function menu in Step 2.

• To send a captured video by Messaging

- 1 Perform Steps 1 to 6
- 2 Select **Create Message** from the Function menu
- 3 Edit the file name, specify the recipient and send





• To record without the keypad sound

Set **Keypad Sound** to **OFF** in **Other Settings**

(See "Sound Settings" on "Keypad Sound" in "Sounds" for details)

Function Menu before Capturing Videos

The following operations are available from the Function menu before capturing:
The displayed menu items and available options vary depending on the mode or settings.

Function Menu Item	Description
Front Camera/Rear Camera*	Switch between the Rear Camera and Front Camera ( Tip "To switch between the Rear Camera and Front Camera").
Change Camera Mode	Switch capturing modes or view captured images.
Change Display Size*	Select an image size.
File Size Setting*	Select a file size suitable for a purpose. Select Messaging Attachment to attach to a message or Local Playback for quick and easy video recording.
Storage Setting*	Select video quality.
Brightness	Use  to adjust Brightness and press  Set .
White Balance*	Select an option to match the current illumination to adjust to a natural colour tone.
Colour Mode Set	Select an option. Select Normal to capture in colour.
Photo Mode	Select an option that matches with the object or conditions.
Shutter Sound*	Select a shutter tone from three types.
Auto Timer*	Capture with Auto Timer ( Tip "To capture with Auto Timer").

Function Menu Item	Description
Auto Save Set*	Set to save captured videos automatically. If selecting ON , select a saving location (Phone or Memory Card).
Display Size*	Select Main Display Size to zoom out to fit the Main Display size.
Video Type Set	Select from Normal , Image or Voice .
Image Tuning*	Change the setting if the image flickers.

* Settings marked with an asterisk are retained after closing the Camera menu.

■ Function Menu from Paused Video

While a video is paused, the following options are available with the Function menu:

Function Menu Item	Description
Normal Play	Plays a video normally
Slow	Plays a video slowly
Fast	Plays a video fast
Stop	Ends playing
Position to Play	Use to specify the position to start playing a video and press Set to start playing from that position
Property	Indicates information on the file such as format

Useful Camera Options

■ Picture Voice

Record sound after capturing an image or add sound to a saved image. Images saved with sound are saved in folders such as the **Inbox** folder of **View Video**.

1 Press and select **Picture Voice** → **Photo Mode**

To use menus

Press and select **Camera** → **Picture Voice** → **Photo Mode**

To add sound to a saved image

- 1 Press and select **Picture Voice** → **View Photo**
- 2 Select a folder and highlight a file in thumbnails then press **Select**
- 3 Proceed to Step 4

2 Frame the shot on the Main Display

3 Press **Record** or the side key

4 Press **Record** or the side key to start recording sound

5 Press **Stop** or the side key to end recording

6 Press **Play** to view a captured image, if necessary

To retry recording

Select **Cancel** from the Function menu and choose **YES**, then restart from Step 4

To change the Display Size

Select **Display Size** from the Function menu and select an option

7 Press **Save** and choose **YES**

Edit a file name, if necessary

8 Select a saving location

Tip








Other operations for Picture Voice

See Capturing Images for zooming, lighting, and using Functions menu.

Chance Capture

Use this feature to record an important moment even if you start capturing a video too soon. Capture a video with Chance Capture to continue capturing even after the file size reaches the limit set for File Size. After the capturing time ends, the beginning section is discarded and the last section of the file will continue to be recorded.

Captured videos are saved in folders such as the **Inbox** folder of **View Video**.

- 1 Press  and select **Chance Capture**
- 2 **Frame the shot on the Main Display**
- 3 Press  **Record** or the side key  to start recording
- 4 Press  **Stop** or the side key  to end recording
- 5 Press  **Play** to view a captured image, if necessary
- 6 Press  **Save** and choose **YES**
Edit a file name, if necessary
- 7 **Select a saving location**

Tip

- **Other operations for Chance Capture**

See Capturing Images for zooming, lighting, and using Functions menu.

- **Capturing Duration**

The capturing duration and total time available appear on the Main Display as in the other video capturing modes. When exceeding the set file size, the duration timer turns "**** : **/** : ****" but allowing you to continue capturing.

Viewing Captured Images

From View Photo, view images captured with the handset, downloaded images, pre-installed images or Original Animations. From View Video, play videos captured with the handset or downloaded videos. Perform the same steps as from Media Player to use options while viewing an image or playing a video. See “Media Player”.

Viewing an Image



- 1 Press  and select *View Photo*

To use menus

Press  and select  → *View Photo*

- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Highlight a file in thumbnails and press  **Display**

Viewing a Video

- 1 Press  and select *View Video*
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Highlight a file in thumbnails and press  **Play**

Editing Captured Images

Edit Saved Images in Data Folder. Some images cannot be edited.




Editing an Image

STEP 1 Open an Image Editing Window

STEP 2 Edit

STEP 3 Save


STEP 1 Open an Image Editing Window

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder* then a file location
- 2 Highlight a file in thumbnails and press  **Display**
- 3 Select *Edit Image* from the Function menu

STEP 2 Edit

- 1 Use the Function menu to edit the image





To add a frame

- ① Select *Frame*
- ② Select a folder then a frame, and view the image
- ③ Press  **Set**




To change the quality or contrast

- 1 Select **Retouch**
- 2 Select an item and view the image
- 3 Press  **Set**




To add a marker

- 1 Select **Marker Stamp**
- 2 Press  **Marker** and select a marker stamp
- 3 Change the angle or size of the stamp using the Function menu, if necessary
- 4 Use  to change the position
- 5 Press  **Put** and view the image
- 6 Press  **Set**

To add text

- 1 Select **Character stamp**
- 2 Enter characters
- 3 Change the colour, font or size of the characters using the Function menu, if necessary
- 4 Use  to change the position
- 5 Press  **Put** and view the image
- 6 Press  **Set**

To trim an image

- 1 Select **Trim away**
- 2 Select a size after trimming
- 3 Use  to change the position
- 4 Press  **Put** and view the image
- 5 Press  **Set**

To rotate an image

- 1 Select **Rotate**
- 2 Select an angle and view the image
- 3 Press  **Set**

To adjust brightness

- 1 Select **Brightness**
- 2 Use  to adjust brightness
- 3 Press  **Set**

2 Repeat Step 1 if necessary

STEP 3 Save

1 Press  **Save**

2 Choose **YES** or **NO**

To overwrite the existing image

Choose **YES**

To save as a separate image

Choose **NO**

Tip

If there is not enough space or the maximum number of files has been saved

Perform the following steps to delete files to free enough space:

- ① Choose **YES** in a confirmation
- ② Select a folder and select a file
- ③ Press **Finish** and choose **YES**

Note

Image quality may deteriorate if the image is processed many times.

Editing a Video

STEP 1 Open an Image Editing Window

STEP 2 Edit

STEP 3 Save

STEP 1 Open an Image Editing Window

- 1 Press and select **Data Folder** then a file location
- 2 Highlight a file on a list and select **Edit Audio & Video** from the Function menu

STEP 2 Edit**1 Use the Function menu to edit the video****To trim a video**

- ① Select **Trim Audio & Video**
- ② Press **Play** if trimming starts after the beginning of the video and press **Stop** at the point where the trimmed video is to begin then **Start**
- ③ Press **Stop** at the end of trimmed video and press **End**
- ④ Press **Play** to check the trimmed video if necessary, then press **Set**

To save a frame as an image

- ① Select **Trim Image**
- ② Press **Play** and press **Stop** at the frame
- ③ Press **Set** and choose **YES**
- ④ Select a saving location (skip STEP 3)

To add a sound to a video

- ① Select **Edit Postrecording**
- ② Press **Play** if the start of the sound comes after the start of the video and press **Start** to start recording
- ③ Press **End** to end recording
- ④ Press **Finish**
- ⑤ Press **Play** to check the video, if necessary, then press **Set**

To resize to attach to Messaging

- 1 Select **Attach to Messaging**
- 2 Press **Play** if the start of the attachment comes after the start of the video, and press **Stop** at the beginning of the attachment then **Start**
- 3 After the playback, press **Play** to check the video, if necessary, then press **Set**

2 Repeat Step 1 if necessary

STEP 3 Save

1 Press **Save**

2 Choose **YES**

Tip

If there is not enough space or the maximum number of files has been saved

Perform the following steps to delete files to free enough space:

- 1 Choose **YES** in a confirmation
- 2 Select a folder and select a file
- 3 Press **Finish** and choose **YES**

Function Menu of the Video Editing Window

The following options are available while editing or playing a video: Different Function menus appear depending on the video.

Function Menu Item	Description
Normal Play	Plays a video normally
Slow	Plays a video slowly
Fast	Plays a video fast
Stop	Ends playing
Start	Set the paused position as the beginning of a segment for Trim
End	Set the paused position as the end of a segment for Trim Audio & Video
Set	Determine the paused position as an image for Trim Image

Sending a captured Image/Video

Send a captured image or video by Messaging right after capturing. For capturing images or videos, see “Capturing Images” or “Capturing Videos”.

1 Select **Create Message** from the Function menu after capturing

To attach a video

Edit a title if necessary



2 Enter a recipient, subject or message text in a new message window and send

Specifying DPOF for Images



DPOF (Digital Print older Format) is a printing format for images captured with a digital camera. Select images, captured with the handset and saved on a miniSD Memory Card, to print (up to 99 images) at a digital camera print shop using DPOF or using a DPOF compatible printer.

- Downloaded images from Vodafone live!, etc. cannot be specified.
- DPOF can be specified only to images saved in the **DCIM** folder on a miniSD Memory Card.
- A warning appears to notify of insufficient space on the card if space is running out while specifying DPOF. In this case, end the operation, delete unnecessary files and restart.
- For details on printing, refer to the instruction manual included with the printing device.

■ Specifying Images and Number of Prints of Each

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → *Memory Card* → *DCIM*
- 2 Select a file
- 3 Select *DPOF Setting* from the Function menu
- 4 Select *Print*
- 5 Enter the number of prints

■ Cancelling DPOF Setting

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → *Memory Card* → *DCIM*
- 2 Cancel print setting
 - To cancel one file
 - ① Select a file
 - ② Select *DPOF Setting* from the Function menu and select *Print OFF*
 - To cancel all files



Select *DPOF Setting* from the Function menu and select *All Print OFF*

Display and Lighting

Display

Set a calendar/image as Stand-by Display. Customise incoming/outgoing call and status check screens with pre-installed, downloaded or captured images or Original Animation.

Default Setting Stand-by Display Calendar: Background
 Stand-by Display Image: Victory
 Dialling, Incoming Call and Checking: Standard

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Display*

2 Customise the Display settings

To display Calendar without a background image on Stand-by Display

- ① Select *Stand-by Display*
- ② Select *Calendar*
- ③ Select *No Background*

To display Calendar and a background image on Stand-by Display

- ① Select *Stand-by Display*
- ② Select *Calendar*
- ③ Select *Background*
- ④ Select a folder
- ⑤ Select an image

To display only an image on Stand-by Display

- ① Select *Stand-by Display*
- ② Select *Image*
- ③ Select a folder
- ④ Select an image

To display an image on a window for making/receiving a call, or checking a service

- ① Select an item from *Dialling, Incoming Call* or *Checking*
- ② Select a folder
- ③ Select an image

Clock Display

Setting Clock Display

Display the Clock in Japanese or English. Set this option to *OFF* to hide the Clock.

Default Setting Japanese

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Clock* → *Clock Display* → *Display*



2 Select an option

Note

If the Language is set to *English*, only *ON* or *OFF* can be chosen.

Customising the Clock Display Size



Default Setting Big

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Clock* → *Clock Display* → *Size*
- 2 Select an option

Display Light

Customise the lighting settings of Main, Sub displays and keypad.

Default Setting Lighting: ON Power Saver Mode: ON,
Light Time: 5 minutes Charging: Standard
 Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Display Light*
- 2 Customise the Display Light settings

To set normal lighting of the Display Light

- 1 Select **Lighting**
- 2 Select an option
- 3 Select an option for Power Saver Mode and enter the Light time if choosing *ON*

To set lighting of the Display Light while charging

- 1 Select **Charging**
- 2 Select an option

To set lighting area of the Display Light

- 1 Select **Area**
- 2 Select an option

To set the brightness of the Main Display Light

- 1 Select **Brightness**
- 2 Select a level

Tip


Parts lit

If **LCD+Keys** is selected, the display and keypad light up. If **LCD** is selected, only the display lights up.

Brightness Level

Select a level from Level 1 (Dark), Level 2 (Normal) and Level 3 (Bright).

To turn the Display Light ON or OFF with a single keystroke

Press  for 1+ seconds in standby. The setting (ON or OFF) in **Lighting** under Display Light also changes. The setting is retained after turning the handset off.



Note

The Sub Display Light brightness cannot be adjusted.

Colour Pattern

Change the text and the background colour scheme on the Main Display.

Default Setting Pattern 1

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Colour Pattern*

2 Select a pattern

Tip

While a pattern option is highlighted

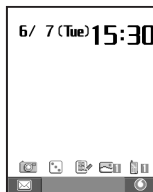
The Display changes to the highlighted colour scheme.

Note

Pictographs and images do not change colours even after Colour Pattern is changed. Also, some data or options do not change Colour Pattern such as Web sites or message text.

Using the Desktop

Add shortcuts to frequently used options, files or phone numbers as Desktop Icons on Stand-by Display to access these with simple steps. Add up to 15 icons.



Desktop Icons on Stand-by Display

The following icons can be added to the desktop:

Desktop Icons	Description
V-application Library, Shortcuts, Schedule, Calculator, Text Memo, Tasks, Camera, Access Reader and Barcode Reader	Opens the associated menu
Images ¹ , Videos and Melodies ²	Opens the associated file
Phone number, e-mail address and URL	Launches the task associated with the data (e.g. dialling, message editor or Web page)

1 Images in the Pre-Installed folder and Original Animations cannot be added as Desktop Icons.

2 Melodies in the Pre-Installed folder and sounds recorded with Voice Announce cannot be added as Desktop Icons.

■ Adding Desktop Icons

Select *Add Desktop Icon* from the Function menu of an option or file to be added to the desktop.

Default Setting ■ Camera

Example: Installing a phone number

- 1 Open phone number details from the Phone Book, Redial or Received Calls
- 2 Select *Add Desktop Icon* from the Function menu and choose *YES*



■ Opening an Option or File from a Desktop Icon

- 1 Press  in standby
- 2 Select a Desktop Icon



■ Viewing Desktop Icon Properties

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Desktop Icon*
- 2 Select a Desktop Icon



■ Editing a Desktop Icon Name

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Desktop Icon*
- 2 Highlight a Desktop Icon and select *Edit Title* from the Function menu
- 3 Edit the name

■ Resetting Default Desktop Icons

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Desktop Icon*
- 2 Select *Reset Desktop* from the Function menu
- 3 Choose *YES*

■ Deleting a Desktop Icon

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Desktop Icon*
- 2 Select an item

To delete an icon

Highlight a Desktop Icon, select **Delete One** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

To delete all icons



Select **Delete All** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

Automatic Display

■ Setting Automatic Display

Set this option to **ON** to display a specific phone number.

Default Setting OFF

1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Display Settings** → **Automatic Display**

2 Select an option

■ Selecting a Phone Number for Automatic Display

A phone number saved on the USIM Card cannot be selected for Automatic Display.

1 Open Contact Details of the phone number

2 Select *Automatic Display* from the Function menu

Tip

If a phone number is already set for **Automatic Display**

A number has been set already. Change to another number? appears. Choose **YES** to change the setting.

Note



The phone number does not appear even if **Automatic Display** is set to **ON** when

- PIM Lock is ON
- All Lock is ON
- Secret Only Mode is set
- A phone number is not specified in **Automatic Display**
- Restrict Dialling is set to other phone numbers

Sub Display

Turn the Sub Display ON/OFF and customise the display by setting Stand-by/background images.

Default Setting Sub Display: ON
 Stand-by: OFF
 Clock Type: Analogue 1, Pictograph: ON
 Image: Victory
 Incoming Call: ON, Image + Phone
 Messaging: ON
 Animation: ON + Backlight OFF

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Sub Display*

2 Select an option

To display items on the Sub Display

Choose **ON** and proceed to Step 3

To hide items on the Sub Display

Choose **OFF**

3 Select an item and customise the Sub Display settings

To display an image in standby

- 1 Select *Stand-by*
- 2 Select an option

To display the Clock in standby

- 1 Select *Clock Type*
- 2 Select an option
- 3 Choose **ON** or **OFF** from Pictograph

To display a background image in standby

- 1 Select *Image*
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Select an image

To set the display for incoming voice or video calls

- 1 Select *Incoming Call*
- 2 Customise the setting and select a display type if choosing **ON**

To set the display for incoming messages

- 1 Select *Messaging*
- 2 Select an option

To set an animation displayed while dialling/during a call

- 1 Select *Animation*
- 2 Customise the setting and set Display Light if choosing **ON**

Tip



When *Stand-by* is set to **ON**

Incoming Call, *Messaging* and *Animation* cannot be selected.

Font Settings

Select a text font from two types to be used on the Main Display and Sub Display. Also, select the thickness of the text on the Main Display from three types. However, the thickness of message text and text on a Web page cannot be changed.

Default Settings Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Font Settings*

2 Select and configure an item

To set a font type

- ① Select **Type**
- ② Select a font

To set a thickness

- ① Select **Thickness**
- ② Select a thickness



Tip

Character types that can be changed to Font 2

When Type is set to **Font 2**, the Roman alphabet, numeric characters, Hiragana, Katakana, some symbols, the Greek alphabet and Russian alphabet are changed to **Font 2**. Kanji and other characters, an entered phone number and text on Clock are not changed.

Selecting the Display Language

Change the language for option names or messages displayed on the Main Display or Sub Display into English.

Default Setting Japanese

1 Press  and select  **設定 (Settings)** → **ディスプレイ設定 (Display Settings)** → **Language**

2 Select **English**

Setting Illumination

Customise the Lamp settings. Use **Illumination** to set a blinking colour and use **Set Pattern** to set a blinking pattern. Use **Adjust Colour** to edit the name of a colour or adjust colour tone. Select a blinking colour from 12 colours or a sequence of colour gradations.

Default Setting Set Colour Phone: Colour 5,
Video Call: Colour 5, Messaging: Colour 1
 Set Pattern: Standard
 Edit Colour Name: Colour 1 to Colour 12

1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Ringtone** → **Illumination**

2 Select and configure an item

To select a blinking colour

- ① Select **Set Colour**
- ② Select an item
- ③ Select a colour




To select a blinking pattern

- ① Select **Set Pattern**
- ② Select a pattern

To edit the name of a colour

- ① Select **Adjust Colour**
- ② Select **Edit Colour Name**
- ③ Select a colour name
- ④ Edit the colour name

To adjust a colour tone

- ① Select **Adjust Colour**
- ② Select **Adjust Colour Tone**
- ③ Select a colour
- ④ Use  to move the cursor to a colour and use  to adjust the brightness
- ⑤ Press  **Set**

Tip

- **To view the Lamp colour**

When selecting a colour for **Illumination** or a colour name for **Adjust Colour**, the Lamp lights up in the highlighted colour.

- **Adjust Colour Tone**

Adjust the colour tone in 12 levels for red, green or blue.

- **Gradation**

Gradation lights up the Lamp in a repeating sequence from Colour 1 to Colour 12 in order.

Setting Illumination in Talk

Select a blinking colour of the Lamp during a call or while a call is on hold from seven colours and three gradations. Set this option to **OFF** to not blink the Lamp.

Default Setting 

1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Call Settings**
→ **Illumination in Talk**

2 **Select a colour or sequence of gradations**

Tip

- **To view a colour or gradation**

In Step 2, the Lamp blinks in the highlighted option.

- **Gradations 1 to 3**

Gradations 1 to 3 have different colour combinations.

Sounds

Ringtones

Setting Ring Volume

Adjust the Ring Volume in six levels or set it to Step that increases the volume every three seconds or Silent that mutes the sound.

Default Setting ■ Phone/Video Call: Level 4
 ■ Messaging: Level 4

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Ringtone* → *Ring Volume*

2 Select an item

3 Use  to adjust the volume

To set to **Step**

Press  in Level 6

To set to **Silent**

Press  in Level 1

4 Press  

Tip

After changing Phone/Video Call in Ring Volume

The same volume will be used for the alarm in the Media Player, Schedule or Tasks, and for trying out ringtones of voice calls or video calls when configuring settings for various options.

After changing the Ring Volume in Messaging

The same volume will be used for trying out ringtones of incoming messages when configuring settings for various options.

After setting to Step or Silent

The Media Player will be played in Level 2.

When Manner Mode is set

The settings for Manner Mode take precedence.

Selecting a Ringtone

Select a different ringtone for voice calls, video calls and incoming messages. Set to Random Melody to use a different ringtone each time a call or message arrives.

Default Setting ■ Phone: Pattern 1 ■ Video Call: Pattern 1
 ■ Messaging: Pattern 2

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Ringtone* → *Select Ringtone*

2 Select an item

3 Select a ringtone

To select a pre-installed melody

- ① Select **Melody**
- ② Select **Pre-installed**
- ③ Select a melody

To select a saved melody

- ① Select **Melody**
- ② Select a folder
- ③ Select a melody

To select a video

- ① Select **Audio & Video**
- ② Select a folder
- ③ Highlight a video and press  **Play** to view the video if necessary
- ④ Select a video

To select a saved Voice Announce

- ① Select **Voice Announce**
- ② Select **Voice Announce 1** or **Voice Announce 2**

To set to use a melody in a folder randomly




- ① Select **Random Melody**
- ② Select a folder

To mute the ringtone

Choose **OFF**

Tip

- **To turn the ringtone off during selection**

In Step 3, the highlighted ringtone sounds. To turn off the ringtone, press ,  (Left),  (Right),  or .

- **To rearrange a list**

When selecting a ringtone from a folder other than Pre-installed and Voice Announce, select **Sort** from the Function menu and select sorting conditions.

- **When setting a ringtone for incoming messages**

Audio & Video cannot be selected.

- **Ringtones and Melodies in the Pre-installed folder**

Name	Remarks
Pattern 1 to 3	—
Melody 1	Scarborough Fair
Melody 2	四季より「秋」
Melody 3	木星
Melody 4	ジユトゥヴ
Melody 5	さくらさくら
Melody 6	カノン
Melody 7	ノクターン
Melody 8	夢路より
Melody 9	トッカータとフーガ
Melody 10	wonderful moments
Alarm 1	Calling
Alarm 2	You've Got Mail
Alarm 3	キラキラ

Name	Remarks
Alarm 4	ヒーリング
Alarm 5	ひよこ
Alarm 6	ハト時計
Alarm 7	アーケード
Alarm 8	Voice Percussion



Note

- Some files can not be selected as a ringtone.
- Files on a miniSD Memory Card cannot be selected.
- Videos cannot be selected for a messaging ringtone.

Vibrator

Select a different vibration pattern for voice calls, video calls and incoming messages.

Default Setting Phone, Video Call and Messaging: All OFF





- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Ringtone* → *Vibrator*
- 2 Select an item
- 3 Select a pattern

To set the handset to vibrate with a ringtone melody

Select *Melody Linkage*

Tip

To turn off the vibration during selection

In Step 3, the handset vibrates with the highlighted pattern. To turn off the vibration, press  (Left),  (Right),  or .



Note

Note that an unattended handset can move on a surface when vibration is activated. When Vibration is set to ON, there is a risk that the handset may move close to a hot object (such as a heater) or drop from a desk because of the vibration for incoming calls or messages.

Messaging Ring

Select whether or not to sound a ringtone for incoming messages. If setting ON, select a ringing time between 1 to 30 seconds.

Default setting ON, Ringing Time 5 seconds

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Ringtone* → *Messaging Ring*
- 2 Customise the setting and specify a Ringing Time if choosing ON

Tip

- When setting to OFF
No ringtone, vibration, lamp or Display Light will be activated when a message arrives.

- **After changing the Ringing Time**

The display lights up for a different duration.

■ Ringing Time

Use this option if you receive many nuisance calls (one-ring calls). Set the ringtone not to sound for a specified number of seconds when a call first arrives. Also, set a missed call icon not to appear if the call is disconnected before the delayed ringing starts.

Default Setting ■ Mute Seconds: 0 Seconds
 ■ Missed Calls Display: Display

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Ringtone* → *Ringing Time*

2 Select and configure an item

To set delay time

- ① Select *Set Mute Seconds*
- ② Enter time in seconds

To set whether to display a missed call during the Mute Seconds

- ① Select *Missed Calls Display*
- ② Select an option

◀ Tip ▶

- **When a call arrives from a phone number saved in the Phone Book**



The ringtone starts sounding at the same time as the call arrives. The ringing time option is applied only for incoming calls from phone numbers not saved in the Phone book.

- **The handset reaction during the Mute Seconds**

An image to notify of an incoming call or message opens on the Main Display and Sub Display. The call can be answered.

Voice Announce

Record a voice in Voice Announce 1 or Voice Announce 2 beforehand to use the voice as an alarm for the Schedule, Tasks or Alarm Clock, an Answer Message for Record Message, Ringtone, or On Hold tone. Record up to 15 seconds per Voice Announce.

1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Voice Announce*

2 Select *Voice Announce 1* or *Voice Announce 2*

3 Select *Record*

4 Record a voice

Five seconds before recording ends

The recording automatically ends after a beep sounds when remaining recording time is five seconds.

To cancel recording

Press  **Stop** or 

Tip

- **To play a recorded voice**
 - ① Perform Steps 1 to 2
 - ② Select **Play**
- **To delete a recorded voice**
 - ① Perform Steps 1 to 2
 - ② Select **Erase** and choose **YES**

.....

Set a Starting Tone when a Voice Announcement is Used for an Alarm

When Set Start Tone is set to **ON**, two short beeps sound before the Voice Announcement and ★ appears next to the menu item, Set Start Tone. Perform the following steps to set or cancel the starting tone:



- ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
 - ② Select **Set Start Tone**
 - ③ Select an option
-

Sound Settings

Keypad Sound

Set whether to turn the keypad sound on or off. The volume is always set to Level 2 if ON is chosen.

Default Setting 

1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Other Settings** → **Keypad Sound**

2 Select an option



Tip**After changing the setting**

The same setting is used for the alarm tone for operations, the Snooze cancel tone, the tone when earpiece volume is adjusted, and beeps to notify of battery level.

Charge Sound

Set whether or not to sound a tone when charging starts and charging ends. Even when this option is set to **ON**, the Charge Sound does not ring while in Manner Mode.

Default Setting 

1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Other Settings** → **Charge Sound**

2 Select an option

Selecting Hold Tone

Set an On Hold Tone, which is played when you cannot answer a call when the call arrives, and a Holding Tone, which is played while the other party is placed on hold during a call.

Default Setting ■ On Hold Tone: Tone 1
 ■ Holding Tone: Melody


1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Call Settings**
→ **Select Hold Tone**

2 Select an item

3 Select a tone

Tip

- To play a tone**

Highlight a tone in On Hold Tone or Holding Tone and press  **Play**

- Hold Tones**

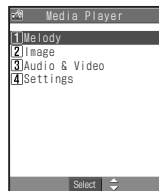
Item	Tone	Description
On Hold Tone	Tone 1	ただいま電話に出ることができません。そのままお待ちになるか、しばらくたってからおかけ直してください。 (I cannot answer the phone right now. Please wait or call back later.)
	Tone 2	ただいま電話に出ることができません。しばらくたってからおかけ直してください。 (I cannot answer the phone right now. Please call back later.)
	Voice Announce 1	A voice recorded with Voice Announce*
	Voice Announce 2	
Holding Tone	Melody	—
	Voice Announce 1	A voice recorded with Voice Announce*
	Voice Announce 2	

* When no voice is recorded, Voice Announce 1 and Voice Announce 2 do not appear.

Media Player

Before Using the Media Player

Use the Media Player to view or play images, videos or melodies saved in the Data Folder.



Media Player Window

Melody submenu serves to play pre-installed, downloaded and recorded sound files as well as provides a link to Vodafone live! for more downloads.

Image submenu serves to view pre-installed, captured or downloaded images as well as provides a link to Vodafone live! for more downloads.

Audio & Video submenu serves to play captured or downloaded videos as well as provides a link to Vodafone live! for more downloads.

Settings submenu serves to customise the settings while using the Media Player such as the lighting of the Main Display and the play pattern for melodies or videos.

Play files or use the Function menus from the Data Folder. For moving or deleting files, and adding subfolders, etc. see "Data Management".

Files Containing Copyright Information

If downloaded melody or image files contain copyright information, restrictions may apply to playing, using or forwarding these files. View copyright information such as **Replay Period**, **Available Time**, or **Replay Times** from **Property** on the Function menu of a list of files.

When only one replay remains, **Replay count rest 1 time Play?** appears when attempting to play the file.

If additional usage rights are not obtained, **No content key** or **Content key is expired** appears. Obtain the content key. After downloading files protected by copyrights or obtaining usage rights, the message that you obtained usage rights is sent.

Playing Melodies/Sounds

Play downloaded melodies or melodies saved in the Pre-installed folder, or sounds recorded with Voice Announce.

- 1 Press  and select  **Media Player** → **Melody**
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Highlight a file in the list and press  

Operations while Playing a File

The following operations are available using keys or the Function menu while playing a file:

- /Side key Raise volume
- /Side key Lower volume
- / Play the last or next file
- / **Off** / / **On** Set or cancel Mute
- Stop** / **Play** Stop or play
- End**
- Function** Open the Function menu

■ Function Menu for a List/while Playing/while Pausing

The following options are available from the Function menu in a file list, while playing a melody or sound, or while pausing the file: Different Function menus appear depending on the file type.

Function Menu Item	Description
Edit Title	Change the title that appears in a list, etc.
Edit File Name	Change the file name that appears in Property, etc.
Set as Ringtone	Set the melody or sound that is highlighted or being played as a ringtone
Add Desktop Icon	Add a melody to Stand-by Display as a Desktop Icon for quick access
Attach to Messaging	Create a new message with the file that is highlighted or being played as an attachment
Property	Display the file size, saved date & time or Copyright Information
Delete One	Delete the highlighted file
Delete Selected	Select files and delete them at once
Delete All	Delete all files in a same folder

Function Menu Item	Description
Sort	Select a sorting condition and rearrange the list
Copy to Memory Card or Copy to Phone	Copy a file that is highlighted or being played to the Data Folder on a miniSD Memory Card or to the handset
Move to Memory Card or Move to Phone	Move a file that is highlighted or being played to the Data Folder on a miniSD Memory Card or to the handset
Move	Move the highlighted file to another folder
Right Acquisition	Obtain the usage rights of files by accessing the Web

Displaying Images

View images captured with the handset, downloaded images, pre-installed images or Original Animations.

- 1 Press and select **Media Player** → **Image**
- 2 **Select a folder**
- 3 **Highlight a file in the list and press** **Display**

■ Function Menu for a List or Open Images

The following options are available from the Function menu of a list or an open image: Different Function menus appear depending on the file type.

Function Menu Item	Description
Edit Image	Edit an image (📷 "Camera")
Edit Title	Change the title that appears in a list, etc.
Set as Display Image	Set an image to a display (📷 "Data Management")
Property	View the file size, saved date and time, and copyright information
Attach to Messaging	Create a new message with the file that is highlighted or being displayed as an attachment.
Ir Exchange	Send data to an infrared communication compatible device (📷 "Infrared Data Communications")
Set Image Display	Set the image display to Real Size or Main Display Size
Add Desktop Icon	Add an image to Stand-by Display as a Desktop Icon for quick access
Copy to Memory Card or Copy to Phone	Copy a file that is highlighted or being displayed to the Data Folder on a miniSD Memory Card or to the handset
Move to Memory Card or Move to Phone	Move a highlighted file to the Data Folder on a miniSD Memory Card or to the handset
Create Contact	Save the image in a Phone Book to use as a Contact Image
Size for Messaging	Reduce the size of JPEG image to a size suitable for mail attachment
Positioning	Specify a new position for an image (📷 "Data Management")

Function Menu Item	Description
Clipping Area	Specify an area of an image to be cropped (📷 "Data Management")
Edit File Name	Change the file name that appears in Property, etc.
Move	Move the highlighted file to another folder
Delete One	Delete the open file
Delete All	Delete all files in the same folder
Multiple-choice	Select and delete or move more than one file*
Sort	Select a sorting condition and rearrange the list
Title Name/Thumbnail	Switch between a title list and thumbnails
Composite Image	Select four images and combine them into an image
Retry	Re-play the animation from the beginning or restore the original display size of the open SVG file that is zoomed in or out, or scrolled up, down, left or right
Right Acquisition	Obtain the usage rights of files by accessing the Web
DPOF Setting	Set the image that is highlighted or being displayed in the DCIM folder on the miniSD Memory Card to be printed (📷 "Camera")
Copy	Copy the highlighted image in the DCIM folder on the miniSD Memory Card to a user-defined folder in the DCIM folder

Function Menu Item	Description
Move	Move the highlighted image in the DCIM folder on the miniSD Memory Card to a user-defined folder in the DCIM folder
Original Animation	Edit an original animation
Release Animation	Release an original animation

* The following options are available from the Function menu:
Title/Thumbnail, Delete, Select All, Release All

Operations while viewing an image

The following operations are available using keys or the Function menu from an open image:

- / Side Key Scroll up a large image
- / Side Key Scroll down a large image
- / Open the last or next image
- (Function) Open the Function menu

When an SVG file is open, the following operations are available:

- / Zoom in or out
- / Scroll to right or left
- / Scroll up or down

Playing Videos

Play videos captured with the handset Camera or downloaded videos. Play a video individually or create a Playlist to play videos in sequence.

Selecting and Playing a Video

- 1 Press and select **Media Player** → **Audio & Video**
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Highlight a file in the list and press **Play**

Function Menu for a List or a Paused Video

The following options are available from the Function menu of a list or an open image: Different Function menus appear depending on the file type.

Function Menu Item	Description
Normal Play	Play a video normally
Slow	Play a video slowly
Fast	Play a video fast
Stop	Stop playback
Position to Play	Use to specify the position to start playing a video and press Set to start playing from that position
Edit Audio & Video	Edit a video ("Camera")
Edit Title	Change the title that appears in a list, etc.
Attach to Messaging	Create a new message with the file that is highlighted or being displayed as an attachment
Set as Ringtone	Set the video that is highlighted or being played as a Ringtone

Function Menu Item	Description
Property	View the file size, the last updated date and time ¹ and the other attributes
Ir Exchange	Send data to an infrared communication compatible device (IR "Infrared Data Communications")
Copy to Memory Card or Copy to Phone	Copy the file that is highlighted or being played to the Data Folder on a miniSD Memory Card or to the handset
Move to Memory Card or Move to Phone	Move the highlighted file to the Data Folder on a miniSD Memory Card or to the handset
Move	Move the highlighted file to another folder
Add Desktop Icon	Add a video to Stand-by Display as a Desktop Icon for quick access
Set Image Display	Set the display size to <i>Actual</i> or <i>Main Display Size</i>
Create Contact	Save the video in a Phone Book to use as a Contact Image
Edit File Name	Change the file name that appears in Property, etc.
Delete One	Delete the highlighted file
Delete All	Delete all files in the same folder
Multiple-choice	Select and delete or move more than one file ²
Sort	Select a sorting condition and rearrange the list
Listing	Titles and/or a clip (a still image) to be displayed on the file list
Right Acquisition	Obtain the usage rights of files by accessing the Web

1 View the creation date and time for downloaded MP4 files.

2 The following options are available from the Function menu:
Delete, Select All, Release All.

■ Operations while Playing/Pausing a Video

The following operations are available using keys or the Function menu while playing/pausing a video:

- **Stop / Play** Pause or replay
- ⏮/Side key **↑** Raise volume
- ⏭/Side key **↓** Lower volume
- ⏮/⏭ Play the last or next video
- ⏮ for 1+ seconds Rewind
- ⏭ for 1+ seconds Fast forward
- ⏮ **Fast** while paying Play fast
- ⏮ **Frame** while pausing Play frame by frame with each press
- ⏮ **Off** / **On** while playing Set or cancel Mute
- CLEAR SCREEN** End
- ⏮ **Function** while pausing Open the Function menu

■ Using a Playlist


Create a Playlist of up to ten videos and play in the order of the list.

- 1 Press **⏮** and select **Media Player** → **Audio & Video**
- 2 Highlight **Playlist** and select **Edit Playlist** from the **Function menu**
- 3 Select a number and select a file from a folder

To remove a video from the Playlist

Select a video and select **Release Audio & Video** and choose **YES**

4 Repeat Step 3 to make the list and press  **Finish**

5 Highlight **Playlist** and press  **Play**

Tip

To remove the Playlist

- 1 Perform Step 1
- 2 Highlight **Playlist** and select **Release Playlist** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

Note

Some files cannot be included in the Playlist. Files saved on a miniSD Memory Card cannot be selected.

Media Player Settings

■ Setting Play Pattern

Use this option to repeatedly play music or video. Set the Media Player to play one file repeatedly or to play all files in a folder or in the Playlist repeatedly.

Default Setting Play One

1 Press  and select  **Media Player** → **Settings** → **Play Pattern**

2 Select an option

■ Setting Display Light while Playing a File

Customise the setting of Main Display lighting while playing a file.

Default Setting Normal

1 Press  and select  **Media Player** → **Settings** → **Display Light**

2 Select an option

Tip

Descriptions of Options

The handset reacts as follows:

- **Normal**: Behaves in accord with **Display Light** in Display Settings.
- **All Time ON**: Stays lit during playback.
- **All Time OFF**: Does not light up even if a key is pressed.

■ SRS_WOW Settings

This is a common option for playing a file from the Media Player or Data Folder. Set this option to ON to enable acoustic effects when playing a video with sound and effects.

Default Setting ON

- ① Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *SRS_WOW Settings*
 - ② Select an option
-

Memory Card

Before Using a Memory Card

With the 802N handset, miniSD Memory Cards can be used as external storage. Save images or videos captured with the handset Camera either in the handset or on a miniSD Memory Card. Also, copy or move data between the handset and miniSD Memory Card.

- A miniSD Memory Card is not packed with the handset. Purchase a commercially available miniSD Card.
- For details on the miniSD Memory Card, refer to the instruction manual that comes with the miniSD Memory Card.
- A miniSD Memory Card must be formatted on a handset before use. If the miniSD Memory Card contains useful information, copy the information to a personal computer before formatting the card (☞ “Using Memory Cards”).

■ Handling miniSD Memory Cards

Observe the following when using a miniSD Memory Card:

- Data stored on a miniSD Memory Card may get lost or altered due to accidents or equipment failure. Please keep a backup copy of important data. Vodafone shall not be liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss or alteration of data.
- Do not insert or remove a miniSD Memory Card while the handset is turned on.

- Insert a miniSD Memory Card correctly. A card is not useable unless it is installed correctly.
- Do not attach new labels. miniSD Memory Cards are made very thin and with precision. The thickness of new labels may cause loose contact or data corruption.
- Keep the miniSD Memory Card away from infants. Infants may swallow a card, or they may get hurt in other ways.
- Use recommended miniSD Memory Cards. miniSD Memory Cards other than recommended may not work.
- While a miniSD Memory Card is being accessed, do not remove the card from the handset, do not turn the handset off, or do not remove the battery. Doing so may damage the data or make the miniSD Memory Card unusable.
- When the battery is low, a miniSD Memory Card may not be usable.

☾ Tip ☽

Recommended Memory Cards for the 802N handset

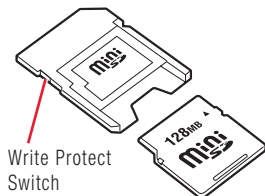
16 Mbytes, 32 Mbytes, 64 Mbytes, and 128 Mbytes miniSD Memory Cards are recommended. miniSD Memory Cards and miniSD Memory Card adaptors are available from electric appliance stores.

■ Using a miniSD Memory Card with Personal Computers

A miniSD Memory Card can be read from a SD Memory Card compatible personal computer by inserting a card into a commercially available miniSD Memory Card adaptor.

■ Write Protect Switch

A miniSD Memory Card adaptor has a write protect switch to prevent deleting data accidentally. Lock the write protect switch when using a miniSD Memory Card to prevent data from being deleted or written.

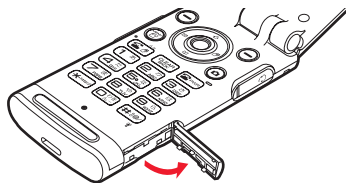


■ Inserting/Removing a miniSD Memory Card

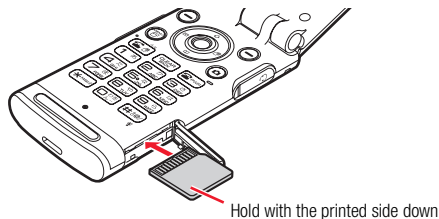
■ Inserting a miniSD Memory Card

Ensure that the handset is turned off before inserting a card.

1 Open the cover of the miniSD Memory Card slot



2 Insert a miniSD Memory Card and push it in gently until it locks in place



3 Close the cover



Tip

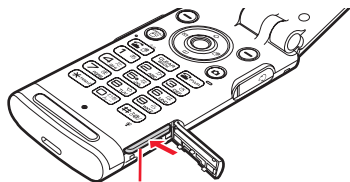
While miniSD Memory Card inserted

 appears on the Main Display.  indicates a Memory Card error or a format failure which requires to Check or Format the card.

■ Removing the miniSD Memory Card

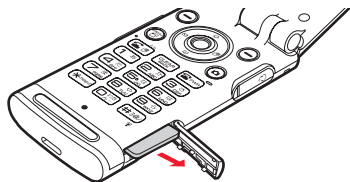
Ensure that the handset is turned off before removing the card.

- 1 **Open the cover of miniSD Memory Card slot and push the miniSD Memory Card in slightly**



Press and then release the miniSD Memory Card.
The card will pop out slightly.

- 2 **Gently pull the miniSD Memory Card out**





Pull the miniSD Memory Card horizontally

- 3 **Close the cover**

Using Memory Cards

■ Formatting a miniSD Memory Card

A miniSD Memory Card must be formatted with the 802N handset.
Formatting a card deletes all data on the card.



- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Memory Card*
- 2 Select *Memory Card Format* from the Function menu
- 3 Enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

◀ Note ▶

- Format the card with a fully charged battery.
- Never remove a miniSD Memory Card or the battery while formatting the card. The miniSD Memory Card or the handset may be damaged.

■ Checking the Status of a miniSD Memory Card

Data may become damaged if the handset is turned off while accessing a miniSD Memory Card. In this case, the data may be recovered by checking the miniSD Memory Card.

- ① Press  and select  **Accessory** → **Memory Card**
- ② Select **Check Memory Card** from the Function menu and choose **Yes**

If the data aren't be recovered after Step②, partly because folders or data created with the handset have been deleted using a personal computer, the miniSD Memory Card must be reformatted. Copy any necessary data from the miniSD Memory Card to a personal computer then format the card with the handset.

■ Viewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card

■ Files that can be Saved on a miniSD Memory Card

Save the following two types of data on a miniSD Memory Card:

Data	Description
Images, movies, melodies (including recordings with Voice Announce), V-applications and vfiles (data saved in the Other Files folder)	Copy or move (V-applications cannot be copied) one file at a time between the handset and a miniSD Memory Card.

Data	Description
Phone Book, Schedule and Tasks	Export or import all data of the Schedule and Tasks at once between the handset and a miniSD Memory Card. Import one file at a time from a miniSD Memory Card to the handset.

■ Checking Space on a Memory Card

Check the size and remaining free space on a miniSD Memory Card.

- ① Press  and select  **Accessory** → **Memory Card**
- ② Select **Memory Card Information** from the Function menu

■ Viewing from the Data Folder

Open the Data Folder and view data on the miniSD Memory Card from default folders.

Press  and select  **Data Folder** then select a folder

To view images

- ① Select **Pictures** → **Memory Card** → **DCIM** or **Picture** and select the folder if **DCIM** selected
- ② Highlight a file and press  **Display**

To view videos or play melodies

- ① Select **Videos** or **Sounds & Ringtones** → **Memory Card**
- ② Highlight a file and press  **Play**

To launch V-applications

- ① Select **V-applications** and select **Change Memory Card** from the Function menu
- ② Select a V-application

To view vfiles

- ① Select **Bookmarks/Templates/Other Files** → **Memory Card**
- ② Select a file
- ③ Select a data

■ Viewing from the Media Player

View images, videos or melodies.

- 1 Press  and select  **Media Player** → **Image, Audio & Video or Melody** → **Memory Card**



To view images

Select **DCIM** or **Picture** and select the folder if **DCIM** selected

- 2 Highlight a file and press  **Display / Play**

■ Viewing from Memory Card on the Accessory Menu

View the Phone Book, Schedule or Tasks exported.

- 1 Press  and select  **Accessory** → **Memory Card**

2 Select a category**To view the Phone Book**

- ① Select **Phone Book** and select a file
- ② Select data

To view the Schedule or Tasks

- ① Select **Schedule** and select a file
- ② Select data

■ Editing Title

When files are exported to a miniSD Memory Card from the handset all at once, the export date/time is assigned to each file as titles. To edit the titles, open a file and perform the following steps:

- ① Highlight a file and select **Edit Title** from the Function menu
- ② Edit the title

Transferring Data

Exchange data between the handset and a miniSD Memory Card.

■ Copying/Moving One File

Copy or move images, videos, melodies or vfiles in the current file format.

For moving V-applications, see “Managing V-applications” in “Basic V-applications Operations”.

■ Copying/Moving Files from the Handset to a miniSD Memory Card

1 Highlight a file in the list

2 Open the Function menu

To copy

Select *Copy to Memory Card*.

If a confirmation appears, select *OK*

To move

Select *Move to Memory Card*.

If a confirmation appears, choose *YES*

☰ Tip ☰

- **To copy after viewing or playing an image, video or melody**
Use the Function menu from an open file and perform the same steps.
- **The default folders for images to be copied/moved to a miniSD Memory Card**
Images in the Digital Camera folder are saved in the DCIM folder and images in the Inbox folder or user-defined subfolders are saved in the Picture folder.
- **Moving files used by particular options to a miniSD Memory Card**
If moving a file set as a display image or a ringtone to the miniSD Memory Card, the setting is reset to its default.
- **After moving an image used in an Original Animation to the miniSD Memory Card**
If moving even an image to the miniSD Memory Card, the Original Animation is cancelled.

■ Copying/Moving Files from a miniSD Memory Card to the Handset

1 Highlight a file in the list

2 Open the Function menu

To copy

Select *Copy to Phone*.

If a confirmation appears, select *OK*

To move

Select *Move to Phone*.

If a confirmation appears, choose *YES*

Tip

- **To copy after viewing or playing an image, video or melody**
Select *Copy to Phone* from the Function menu from an open file and perform the same steps.
- **Copied/Moved images are saved on the handset in**
Images in the DCIM folder will be saved in the Digital Camera folder and images in the Picture folder will be saved in the Inbox folder.

Importing/Exporting Data

Copying the Phone Book, Schedule and Tasks data on the handset all at once to a miniSD Memory Card converts them into vfiles automatically. This operation is called "export" and the opposite operation is called "import".

* To copy an entry in the Phone Book, Schedule or Tasks one at a time to a miniSD Memory Card, convert an entry into a vfile and save it separately in the Other Files folder (☰ "Using vfiles" in "Data Management"). Then perform the steps in Copying/Moving One File.

Exporting Data from the Handset to a miniSD Memory Card all at Once

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Memory Card*
- 2 Perform operations to export data

To export the Phone Book

- ① Highlight *Phone Book* then select *Export* from the Function menu
- ② Enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

To export the Schedule and/or Tasks

- ① Highlight *Schedule* then select *Export* from the Function menu
- ② Select the menu item
- ③ Enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

Tip

When Exporting the Phone Book

Items in *My Contact Details* are also exported.

Importing Data from a miniSD Memory Card to the Handset All at Once

Each Phone Book, Schedule or Tasks entry on a miniSD Memory Card is managed in a file by each exporting. Import this file to the handset. When importing a file, select either to add or to overwrite the file on the handset.

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Memory Card*
- 2 Select a category

To import the Phone Book

Select *Phone Book*

To import the Schedule or TasksSelect *Schedule***3 Highlight a file and select *Import & Add* or *Import & Overwrite* from the Function menu****4 Enter the Security Code and choose *YES***

Tip

- **To import all data contained in a file at once after viewing**
 - ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
 - ② Select a file to view a list of data then select *Import & Add All* or *Import & Overwrite All*
 - ③ Enter the Security Code and choose *YES*
- **To not change personal data when performing *Import & Overwrite* or *Import & Overwrite All***
Choose *NO* when *Set the first data as your own data?* appears.

■ Importing One Entry at a Time from a miniSD Memory Card to the Handset

Import one entry from the Phone Book, Schedule or Tasks on a miniSD Memory Card at a time.

1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Memory Card***2 Select a category****To import the Phone Book**Select *Phone Book***To import the Schedule or Tasks**Select *Schedule***3 Select a file****4 Highlight a file and select *Import & Add One* from the Function menu and choose *YES***

Note



The handset becomes out of the service area while transferring data.

■ Deleting Files

Perform the following steps to delete data from the Phone Book, Schedule or Tasks on the miniSD Memory Card

- ① Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Memory Card*
- ② Select an item
- ③ Highlight a file
- ④ Select *Delete One* from the Function menu and choose *YES*

To delete all files in the Phone Book or Schedule

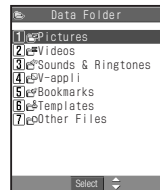
- ① Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Memory Card*
- ② Select a category
- ③ Select *Delete All* from the Function menu, enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

Data Management (Data Folder and vfiles)

Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data created or downloaded using the handset.

Use default folders or user defined sub folders to organise data.



Data Folder list

Data Folder Structure

There are seven default folders in the Data Folder. There are subfolders (categorized files, shortcuts to Web access or Playlist, etc.) in default folders. User-defined subfolders can also be created.

File types that can be saved vary depending on the default folder. All file types can be saved in the Other Files folder.



Tip

- **Folder in Memory Card folder**

Select **Memory Card** in the Pictures folder to view two folders, DCIM and Picture.

Save images (JPEG (DCF)) captured in the Digital Camera mode in the DCIM folder and save the same types of files as the Inbox folder in Pictures.


- **Shortcuts to Access the Mobile Internet**


More Pictures, More Videos and More Sounds are shortcuts. Select them and choose **YES** to access the Mobile Internet.

- **File icons**

An icon with a key appears next to a file that cannot be transferred.

Example  A JPEG file that can be transferred

 A JPEG file that cannot be transferred

 indicates a corrupted file

miniSD Memory Cards

With the 802N handset, miniSD Memory Cards can be used as storage. Images or videos captured with the handset Camera can be directly saved to a memory card. Data can be copied or moved between the handset and miniSD Memory Card. Using the Data Folder, data saved on a miniSD Memory Card can be viewed.

Folder	Sub Folder	Description	File Format	Capacity
Pictures	Inbox, More Pictures, Digital Camera, Pre-installed, Original Animation, Memory Card	Manages images captured by the handset camera	JPEG, JPEG(DCF), GIF, WBMP, PNG, SVG, pre-installed images	Approx. 2 Mbytes 400 files*
Videos	Inbox, More Videos, Memory Card, Playlist	Manages videos captured by the handset camera	MP4 (with video), MP4 (without video)	Approx. 3 Mbytes 100 files*
Sounds & Ringtones	Inbox, More Sounds, Pre-installed, Voice Announce, Memory Card	Manages downloaded melodies or recorded sound by Voice Announce	SMAF, MIDI, pre-installed melodies	Approx. 840 Kbytes 160 files*
V-applications	—	Manages V-applications	Java (Downloaded Java application) Java (Pre-installed Java application)	3 to 100 files
Bookmarks	Phone, Memory Card	Manages Bookmarks saved on the handset and a miniSD Memory Card	vBookmark	100 files
Templates	Phone, Memory Card	Manages Text Memos saved on the handset and a miniSD Memory Card	vNote, TEXT	10 files
Other Files	Phone, Memory Card	Manages vfiles or HTML files saved on the handset and a miniSD Memory Card	TEXT, vCard, vCalendar, vBookmark, vNote, HTML, XHTML, CSS, WML, WMLC, WMLS, WMLSC, WBXML, Unknown files	Approx. 500 Kbytes 100 files*

* The number of files varies depending on each file size.

Opening Saved Files

Opening Files

1 Press  and select  *Data Folder*

2 Select a folder and select a sub folder

3 Highlight a file in the list and

press  **Select / Display / Play**

To toggle between the display of thumbnails and a list of file names

Select *Sort* or *Thumbnail* from the Function menu

To toggle between the display of videos with and without a thumbnail

Select *Listing* from the Function menu and select *Title* or *Title + Image*

Tip

- To view images captured in Digital Camera Mode on the miniSD Memory Card

① Perform Step 1

② Select *Pictures* → *Memory Card* → *DCIM*, and select a folder

③ Perform Step 3

- To view images on the miniSD Memory Card

① Perform Step 1

② Select *Pictures* → *Memory Card* → *Picture*

③ Perform Step 3

- To view vfiles

① Perform Steps 1 and 2

② Select a vfile on the list and select the data

Thumbnail Settings

The file list display can be changed. Select to use titles or thumbnails for display.

Default Setting Thumbnail

① Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Thumbnail Settings*

② Select an option

When using the Thumbnail option, to highlight a file, move the frame to a file.

■ Using the Function Menu of the Data Folder

Use the Function menu from a list or open file. Different Function menus appear depending on the file or folder type. This section explains common Function menus.

Function Menu Item	Description
Edit Title/ Edit Title name	Change the title that appears in a list, etc.
Edit File Name	Change the file name that appears in Property, etc.
Property	View the file size, the last updated date and time*, content key information and the other attributes
Attach to Messaging	Compose a new message with the selected file as an attachment
Ir Exchange	Send data to the Ir Exchange compatible handset (📶 "Infrared Data Communication")
Sort	Select a sorting condition and rearrange the list
Copy to Memory Card, Move to Memory Card, Copy to Phone and Move to Phone	Copy or move data between the handset and a miniSD Memory Card (📶 "Memory Card")

* View the creation date and time for downloaded MP4 files.



Using Image Files

Saved images file in Picture Folder of the Data Folder can be used for many functions or can be processed. For operations from an open image, see "Media Player".


■ Using Image Files

■ Set Images to Display

Set to display an image on Stand-by Display, when receiving a call, or during a video call as an alternative image.

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder* then a file location
- 2 Select or highlight an image and select *Set as Display Image* from the Function menu of the list or an open image
- 3 Select a display usage

To select an image for display for video calls

- ① Select *On Hold* and view the image
- ② Press  **Set** .



If a confirmation appears, choose *YES*

■ Specifying a Location for the Set Image

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder* then a file location
- 2 Select or highlight an image and select *Positioning* from the Function menu of the list or an open image





3 Select a position

■ Specifying a Display Range for the Set Image

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder* then a file location
- 2 Select or highlight an image and select *Clipping Area* from the Function menu of the list or an open image
- 3 Select the range

■ Combining Four Images into One

Select four images, specify their positions and combine them. The combined image is saved as a new file leaving the four files intact.

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder* then a file location
- 2 Select *Composite Image* from the Function menu
- 3 Select a position then an image
- 4 Repeat Step 3 to set four images and press  **Finish**
- 5 View the combined image and press  **Save**

To cancel saving

Press  **Cancel**

Tip

Saving Location of a Combined Image

The image is saved in the same folder in which *Composite Image* is selected.

■ Creating Animations

Create an animation with up to 20 frames.

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → *Original Animation*

2 Select <New>

3 Select a frame and select a folder

To cancel set images

Select an image and select *Release this*

4 Select an image

To view the image before selecting

Press  **Play**

Press  to return to the list of images

5 Repeat Steps 3 and 4

6 Press **Finish** to end selection

Tip

• To edit an original animation

Replace or add images. To replace an image, select a set frame and select a new image.

- 1 Perform Step 1
- 2 Highlight an original animation and select **Original Animation** from the Function menu
- 3 Perform Steps 3 to 6

• To cancel an original animation

- 1 Perform Step 1
- 2 Highlight an original animation and select **Release Animation** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

Using Sound Files

Set a melody or sound file saved in the Data Folder as a ringtone. Depending on the file format or data, some files may not be usable.

For operations during playback, see "Media Player".

■ Setting as a Ringtone

- 1 Press  and select  **Data Folder** then a file location

- 2 Highlight the file on the list and select **Set as Ringtone** from the Function menu

- 3 Select an item

Tip

To play a file before setting

Use the Function menu during a playback.

Using vfiles

■ vfiles

With vfiles, data on the handset can be exchanged with other Vodafone handsets or PCs. Using vfiles allows managing the Phone Book or Schedule saved on the handset with a PC or importing data created with another Vodafone handset or PC to the handset.

The following can use vfiles:

File Format	Function
vCard	Phone Book
vCalendar	Schedule and Tasks
vNote	Text Memo
vBookmark	Bookmarks

■ Using the Handset Data with Other Devices

When data such as Phone Book contacts or the Schedule is saved in the Data Folder, they are saved in vfile format automatically. Saved vfiles can be sent to other Vodafone handsets or PCs as an attachment by Messaging or transferred via the infrared port.

When a miniSD Memory Card is inserted, vfiles can be saved on the card. Insert the miniSD Memory Card to other miniSD Memory Card compatible Vodafone handsets or PCs to use vfiles.

■ Using Obtained Data with the Handset

vfiles obtained from other Vodafone handsets or PCs via Messaging, Web or Ir Exchange are saved to the Data Folder on the handset. To use the vfiles on the handset and a miniSD Memory card, add them to associated functions.

◀ Note ▶

- To use vfiles with a PC, you must have software that handles vfiles installed on the PC. Depending on the data, some files cannot be added to a Vodafone handset or used with a PC.
- Depending on your PC model or a miniSD Memory Card reader, a card formatted with the 802N handset or vfiles saved on the card may not be readable.

■ Creating or Saving vfiles

Created vfiles are saved in the Other Files folder in the Data Folder. To open data, see pages for each function.



- 1 Display data
- 2 Select *Save to Data Folder* from the Function menu and choose *YES*

◀ Note ▶

vfiles for Bookmarks cannot be created with the 802N handset.

■ Adding vfiles to Associated Functions

Add vfiles saved on the handset or a miniSD Memory Card to each function.

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder*
- 2 Select *Other Files*
- 3 Select *Phone or Memory Card*
- 4 Highlight a vfile and select the Function menu

To add to Phone Book

Select *Add to Phone Book*, enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

To add to Schedule or Tasks

Select *Add to Schedule/Tasks*, enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

To add to Bookmarks

Select *Add to Bookmarks*, enter the Security Code and choose *YES*



To add to Text Memo

Select *Add to Text Memo*, enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

Managing Folders

■ Creating Folders



Create subfolders in Pictures, Videos and Sounds & Ringtones folders.

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder*
- 2 Select a folder and select *Add folder from the Function menu*
- 3 Enter a name

Tip

To create a folder in the DCIM folder on a miniSD Memory Card



If there is already an image saved in the DCIM folder, a subfolder can be created in the DCIM folder.

- ① Press  and select  *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → *Memory Card* → *DCIM*
- ② Select *Create folder* from the Function menu
- ③ Enter a name

■ Saving Location of Images Captured with Digital Camera Mode

If Memory Card is selected as a saving location for an image captured in Digital Camera mode, the image is saved in the DCIM folder on the miniSD Memory Card. If Auto Save Set under the Camera is *ON* and Memory Card is specified as a saving location, images are saved in the same folder.

The saving location can be changed to a user-defined folder created in the DCIM folder. Perform the following steps:

- ① Press  and select  *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → *Memory Card* → *DCIM*
- ② Highlight a folder, select *Select storage* from the Function menu and choose *YES*

■ Renaming Folders



User-defined folders can be renamed.

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder*

- 2 Select a folder and highlight a user-defined subfolder, then select *Edit folder name* or *Edit folder title* from the Function menu
- 3 Enter a name

■ Deleting Folders



User-defined folders can be deleted.

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder*
- 2 Select a folder and highlight a user-defined subfolder, then select *Delete folder* from the Function menu
- 3 Enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

Managing Files

■ Renaming Files

The title that appears in a list, etc. can be changed.

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder*
- 2 Select a saving location and highlight the file

- 3 Select *Edit Title Name* or *Edit Title* from the Function menu
- 4 Enter a name

■ Moving Files

Move files to user-defined subfolders to organise them. Files may not be moved to some subfolders depending on the file formats.

- 1 Press  and select  *Data Folder* then select a source folder
- 2 Use the Function menu to move


To move one file in Pictures/Videos folder

- ① Highlight the file and select *Move* from the Function menu
- ② Select a destination folder

To select and move more than one file in the Pictures/Videos folder

- ① Select *Multiple-choice* from the Function menu
- ② Highlight all files and select *Move* from the Function menu
- ③ Select a destination folder

To select and move more than one file in the Sounds & Ringtones folder

- ① Select **Move** from the Function menu
- ② Select a source folder
- ③ Select all files to move and press  **Finish**
- ④ Choose **YES**

■ Deleting Files

Perform different steps to delete files depending on a default folder. This section explains steps to delete files in the Pictures, Videos, Sounds & Ringtones and Other Files.

For deleting V-applications, see “Managing V-applications” in “Basic V-applications Operations”, for Bookmarks, see “Bookmarks” in “Using Information”, and for Templates, see “Text Memo” in “Using Accessories”.

1 Press  and select  **Data Folder** then select a folder

2 Use the Function menu to delete

To delete one file

Highlight the file and select **Delete One** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

To select and delete more than one file in the Pictures or Videos folder

- ① Select **Multiple-choice** from the Function menu
- ② Highlight all files to delete
- ③ Select **Delete** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

To select and delete more than one file in the Sounds & Ringtones or Other Files folder

- ① Select **Delete Selected** from the Function menu
- ② Select items and press  **Finish** / **OK**
- ③ Choose **YES**

To Delete all files in a folder

- ① Select **Delete All** from the Function menu
- ② Enter the Security Code and choose **YES**

Tip

- **Deleting a file used by particular options**

If deleting a file set as a display image or a ringtone, the setting is restored to the default.

Deleting a file specified in the **Select Image** of **Video Call Settings** doesn't affect the settings.

- **Deleting an image used for Original Animation**

If deleting any of the images used as Original Animation, the Original Animation is cancelled.

- **To delete all images saved on the handset except those in the Pre-installed folder**

All images saved on the handset can be deleted at once except default images.

- ① Press  and select  **Data Folder** → **Pictures**
- ② Select **Delete all images** from the Function menu
- ③ Enter the Security Code and choose **YES**

Infrared Data Communication

Before Using Infrared Data Communication

Exchange the following types of data with IrDA compliant Vodafone handsets or PCs:

To be transferred one by one	Phone Book entry, My Contact Details contents, Scheduled event, Task, Text Memo, image, Video, vfile
To be transferred all at once	Phone Book, Scheduled events, Tasks

Note

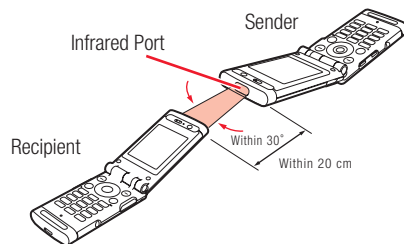
- **Phone Book entries transferred at once overwrite the recipient's Phone Book except own number registered as *My Contact Details*.**
- **Data on the USIM Card and a miniSD Memory Card will not be transferred via IrDA.**

When Performing IrDA Communications

Follow the instructions on IrDA communications listed below:

- Place devices' infrared ports facing each other within 20 cm.
- Place the devices on a stable surface. Do not move the devices until the exchange is completed.

- Avoid direct sunlight or florescent light and near other infrared devices. Failing to do so may result in a communication failure.



Tip

When IrDA Communication is interrupted

If *Connection interrupted. Retry?* appears, ensure that the requirements for IrDA communications are met and choose **YES**.

Note

- **The 802N handset complies with IrMC1.1. However, some data may not be transferred depending on the application in use, even though the other device complies with IrMC1.1.**
- **During IrDA communication, the handset becomes out of the service area.**

Using IrDA Communications

■ Transferring Data One by One

■ Sending One by One

Use the Function menu from a list of entries or entry detail.

- 1 Highlight data in a list of a entries or entry detail
- 2 Select *Ir Exchange* from the Function menu
- 3 Set the receiver to receive data
- 4 Choose *YES*
- 5 A message appears after the data is sent





Tip

To view data before sending

Depending on the type of entry, data can be sent from details or playback.

■ Receiving One by One

Select *Receive* from Ir/Send via IrDA to make the handset ready to receive data.



- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* →
Ir/Send Via IrDA → *Receive*

- 2 Wait for the sender to perform the steps to send one piece of data
- 3 Choose *YES* after transmission completes



■ Transferring All Data at Once

The Security Codes and a session number (a 4-digit number both parties agree to) are required for the sender and receiver.

■ Sending All

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* →
Ir/Send Via IrDA → *Data Exchange*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Select *Send*
- 4 Select data
- 5 Enter a session number
- 6 Set the receiver to receive data
- 7 Choose *YES*
- 8 A message appears after the transmission has completed

■ Receiving All

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Ir/Send Via IrDA* → *Data Exchange*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Select *Receive*
- 4 Enter a session number and choose *YES*
- 5 Wait for the sender to perform the steps to send data all at once
- 6 Choose *YES*

◀ Tip ▶

Session Number

The session number is a 4-digit number agreed to by the sender and receiver, and used for sending or receiving all data via IrDA.



◀ Note ▶

- After receiving all data, the saved data on the recipient's handset will be overwritten including secret data. Ensure that any important data will not be overwritten before receiving all data.
- When all contacts in the Phone Book are received, the data in *My Contact Details* on the recipient's handset will be overwritten except the handset phone number.

■ To Send Phone Book Contacts without Images

Images or videos used in Phone Book contacts are also transferred and this may take a while. To transfer contacts without images and reduce transfer time, change the sender's setting as follows:



Default Setting ON

- ① Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Forwarding Image*
- ② Choose *OFF*

Handset Security

Changing the Security Code

Default Setting 9999



- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *Change Security Code*
- 2 Enter the current Security Code
- 3 Enter a new Security Code (4- to 8 -digits)
- 4 Choose *YES*

Setting PIN Codes

■ Changing the PIN1/PIN2

The PIN1 and PIN2 passwords for the USIM Card, can be changed.

Default Setting 9999 for PIN1 and PIN2 Codes

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *PIN Settings*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Select *Change PIN1 Code* or *Change PIN2 Code* and enter the current PIN1 or PIN2

14-2

- 4 Enter a new PIN1 or PIN2 (4- to 8-digits)
- 5 Enter the new PIN1 or PIN2 again

Note

When the *PIN1 Code Entry Set* is set to *OFF*, the PIN1 cannot be changed.

■ Requiring the PIN1 when the Handset is Turned On

Use this option to prevent unauthorised use of the USIM Card. To require PIN1 entry every time the handset is turned on, set this option to *ON*.

Default Setting OFF

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *PIN Settings*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Select *PIN1 Code Entry Set*
- 4 Select an option and enter the PIN1

Tip

If the setting is not changed in Step 4
The PIN1 is not required.

Note

If the PIN1 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, the current PIN1 becomes invalid. This only allows access to limited functions.

Unlocking a PIN

If the PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, the current PIN1 or PIN2 becomes invalid and only limited tasks can be accessed. This is called a PIN lock. If a PIN is locked, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46) and perform the following steps to unlock the PIN and set a new PIN:

- 1 Enter the Personal Unlock Key (PUK) code while *Enter PUK Code* is displayed
- 2 Enter the new PIN1 or PIN2
- 3 Enter the new PIN1 or PIN2 again

Note

- If a PUK Code to unlock PIN1 is entered incorrectly ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked. Once USIM Card is locked, all operations are blocked.
- If a PUK Code to unlock PIN2 is entered incorrectly ten times consecutively, no operations requiring PIN2 can be performed.
- If the USIM Card is locked, certain procedures must be followed. Contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).



Preventing Unauthorised Use of the Handset

All Lock


Setting All Lock allows turning the handset on or off only.

Setting All Lock

Default Setting Released

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *All Lock*
- 2 Enter the Security Code

Tip

- **While All lock is set**
All Lock and  appears on Stand-by Display.
- **When a call or message arrives during All Lock**
The handset does not notify of the incoming call or new message. After All Lock is released, the Desktop Icons for Missed Call or New Message appears on Stand-by Display.
- **At the set time of an Alarm during All Lock**
The Alarm does not sound. After All Lock is released, the Desktop Icons for Missed Alarm appears on Stand-by Display.
- **When the handset is turned off during All Lock**
The setting will be retained.

■ Releasing All Lock

Enter the Security Code and press 

Note

If the Security Code is incorrectly entered five times consecutively, the handset turns itself off.

■ Personal Information Management (PIM Lock)

Set PIM Lock to protect personal information. The following restrictions apply when PIM Lock is set:

- Phone Book, Schedule, Tasks, Mailing List, Text Memo, Record Message, Voice Memo, Web, Messaging, V-applications, Camera, Data Folder and My Contact Details cannot be accessed.
- Alarm does not sound at the time set with Schedule, Alarm Clock or Tasks.
- When making or receiving a call, the name saved in the Phone Book does not appear.
- Desktop Icons for New Message, Missed Calls, Missed Alarm, Record Message and Voice Mail do not appear.
- Desktop Icons for V-application Library, images, videos, melodies, phone numbers, URLs and e-mail addresses do not appear.

- Entries in Redial, Received Calls, Sent Address and Received Address are deleted.
- Reset Settings, Memory Reset and All Reset cannot be performed.




■ Setting/Releasing PIM Lock

Default Setting  Released 

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *PIM Lock*

2 Enter the Security Code

Tip

- **While PIM is locked**
 appears on the Main Display.
- **If PIM Lock and All Lock are set concurrently**
 (All Lock indicator) appears instead of . To release PIM Lock, release All Lock first.
- **When the handset is turned off during PIM Lock**
PIN remains locked.
- **When a call or message arrives during PIM Lock**
After releasing PIM Lock, Desktop Icons appear on Stand-by Display.
- **When the image or music besides pre-installed is used by particular options**
Images or Ringtones are restored to the default during PIM Lock.

■ Keypad Dial Lock

Outgoing calls or messages to phone numbers or e-mail addresses not saved in the Phone Book can be barred. Only the following calls or messages can be sent while Keypad Dial Lock is set:

- Calls or messages sent to Phone Book contacts saved before the setting
- Calls or messages sent using Redial or Sent Address set after the setting
- Emergency calls to the police “110”, fire “119” or Coast Guard “118”




■ Setting/Releasing Keypad Dial Lock

Default Setting OFF

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *Keypad Dial Lock*

2 Enter the Security Code

 Tip 

- **While Keypad Dial Lock is set**
 appears on the Main Display. If Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode is set concurrently,  appears or blinks. If PIM Lock is set concurrently,  appears or blinks.
- **When the handset is turned off during Keypad Dial Lock**
The setting is retained.

 Note 

- **After Keypad Dial Lock is set, all entries in Redial, Received Calls, Sent Address and Received Address are deleted.**
- **Phone Book contacts cannot be saved, edited or deleted during Keypad Dial Lock.**

Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls

Use various methods to restrict incoming or outgoing calls. If restricting dialling, only calls to permitted phone numbers can be made. If restricting incoming calls, unauthorised calls are rejected and the caller hears busy tone. However, the Missed Call Desktop Icon appears on Stand-by Display.

In addition to the options explained in this section, Call Barring can also be used to set the handset to make or receive only certain calls. For more information, see “Optional Services”.

■ Setting Restrictions



Restrictions can be set to limit outgoing or incoming calls to all or specified numbers contained in the Phone Book on the handset to prevent personal calls or nuisance calls.

The following three options are available. Designate up to 20 phone numbers for each option.

- **Restrict Dialling:** Calls only to the specified phone numbers can be made.
- **Call Rejection:** Calls or data communications from the specified phone numbers are rejected.
- **Call Acceptation:** Only calls or data communications from the specified phone numbers are accepted. All other calls or data communications are rejected.

- 1 **Open Contact Details of a phone number**
- 2 **Select *Restrictions* from the Function menu**
- 3 **Enter the Security Code**
- 4 **Select an option**

Tip

- **To cancel the settings**
 - ★ appears next to the set option. If selecting an option with ★ in Step 4, the setting will be cancelled.
- **To check the settings**
 - 1 Press  and select  *Phone Book* → *Restrictions*
 - 2 Enter the Security Code
 - 3 Select an option with ★
 - 4 To view a phone number, select a name from the list



Note

- **Restrictions cannot be set to phone numbers saved on the USIM Card or Phone Book contacts set as Secret.**
- **Setting Restrict Dialling deletes all entries in Redial.**
- **Setting Restrict Dialling prevents Phone Book contacts from being saved, edited, deleted or copied to the USIM Card, and deactivates Dialling from Received Calls.**
- **Desktop Icons assigned to phone numbers in Phone Book become unavailable while Restrict Dialling is set.**

Setting Reject Unknown

Reject all incoming calls from phone numbers not saved in the handset or the USIM Card Phone Book.

Default Setting Accept

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *Reject Unknown*
- 2 **Enter the Security Code**
- 3 **Select an option**

Note

If a Caller ID is not sent, this option becomes invalid.



■ Setting Call Setting without ID

Reject an incoming call without Caller ID. Also, reject nuisance calls by saving the phone numbers to a Reject Call List.

■ Accepting/Rejecting Calls

Set conditions to accept or reject a call without Caller ID depending on the caller. If accepting calls, set a different ringtone to identify them.

Default Setting Accept for all reasons (normal ringtone)

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *Call Setting without ID*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Select a reason or *List*
- 4 Customise the setting and select a ringtone if choosing *Accept*

■ Reasons for No ID







Reasons for no ID are categorized into three circumstances. If the caller does not send the Caller ID, the reason for no ID appears on the display while receiving the call.

- Not Supported: The call was made from overseas or from a network that does not allow sending Caller ID
- Payphone: The call was made from a payphone

- User Unset: The caller was set to withhold the Caller ID

■ Saving Phone Numbers to a Reject Call List

Select a phone number from Received Calls, Phone Book or Redial, or enter a phone number to save the number to the list. Save up to 20 phone numbers.

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *Call Setting without ID*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Highlight *List* and press  
- 4 Press   and select a source
- 5 Select or enter a phone number



Tip

- To delete a phone number from the Reject Call List
 - ① Perform Steps 1 to 3
 - ② Highlight a phone number, select *Delete One* from the Function menu and choose **YES**
To delete all phone numbers, select *Delete All*

- **To correct a phone number saved in Reject Call List**

- ① Perform Steps 1 to 3
- ② Select a phone number
- ③ Select **Edit** from the Function menu and correct



Saving a Secret Contact/Schedule

Save Phone Book contacts or Schedule events that you do not want to reveal to others while in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode as Secret Data. To access Secret Data, the Security Code is required.

In Secret Mode, all Phone Book contacts or Schedule events including Secret Data can be accessed. In Secret Only Mode, only Secret Data can be accessed.

■ Saving Phone Book Contacts/Schedule Events as Secret



Default Setting Not set to Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode


- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode*
- 2 Enter the Security Code to set Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode
- 3 Save Phone Book contacts or Schedule events

14-8


Tip

- **When Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode is set**


 appears on the Main Display in Secret Mode. When switching to Secret Only Mode,  starts blinking and the number of Secret Data entries appears. It returns to standby in a few seconds.

- **If Keypad Dial Lock and Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode are set concurrently**
 appears or blinks.

- **To cancel Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode**

While in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, press . Alternatively, perform Step 1 or turn the handset off.



- **If All Lock and Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode are set concurrently**

Only  (All Lock indicator) appears. Releasing All Lock releases Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.

Note

- Phone Book contacts cannot be saved as Secret in the USIM Card.
- If a voice or video call is answered while in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, the mode is cancelled.


■ Accessing, Editing or Deleting Secret Data

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Lock/Security* → *Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode*
- 2 Enter the Security Code to set Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode

3 View, edit or delete a Phone Book contact or Scheduled event

Tip

- **While accessing Secret Data**

 blinks on the Main Display.

- **To access Secret Data as normal data**

View Secret Data and select **Release Secret** from the Function menu.



Phone Book Contacts and Schedule Events Saved as Secret

- A name saved in a Phone Book does not appear while receiving a call or in Received Calls.
- Calls made using Secret Data are not saved in Redial.
- Only in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, calls can be made using Two-touch Dialling or Handsfree Headset.
- Adding to Desktop, Automatic Display, Restrictions, Phone Book Utilities and Group Utilities cannot access Secret Data in the Phone Book. Secret Data in the Phone Book cannot be copied to the USIM Card.
- Even while not in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, a secret Schedule Alarm sounds but the Alarm Message does not appear.

Side Keys Guard

Use Side Keys Guard to avoid pressing keys accidentally while carrying the folded handset in a bag.

Default Setting OFF

1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Other Settings** → **Side Keys Guard**

2 Select an option

Tip

While Side Keys Guard is ON

 appears on Stand-by Display.

The following side key operations are disabled while the handset is folded:

- Checking Missed Calls or New Message with a tone or voice prompt
- Launching Camera menu, or using Shutter or Lamp
- Using the side keys while receiving a call



Note

Side keys are enabled regardless of the setting of this option while a Handsfree Headset is connected or a handset is connected to a PC through the external connector.

Restoring Default Settings



Reset Settings

Settings of options can be restored to their default. However, some options such as Clock or personal information such as Phone Book contacts will be retained (☞ “Settings to be Reset” in “Appendix”).

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *Reset Settings*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Choose *YES*



Memory Reset

All personal information such as entries in the Phone Book or Schedule, Redial, Received Calls, and sent or received messages can be deleted all at once (☞ “Settings to be Reset” in “Appendix”).

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *Memory Reset*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Choose *YES*

All Reset

Reset Settings and Memory Reset are both performed at once and the handset turns itself off and back on.

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *All Reset*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Choose *YES*

Tip

Using the handset after performing All Reset

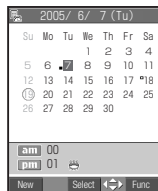
Retrieving Network Information is necessary after performing All Reset (☞ “Network Settings” in “Vodafone live!”).

Using Accessories

Using Schedule

Organises calendar entries such as scheduled events, personal holidays and anniversaries up to 100 each.

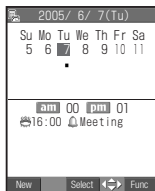
Calendar Views



By Month

Schedule indicators

- “_” : Today
- Date in Red: Sundays, National Holidays and set Holidays
- Date in Blue: Saturdays
- ○ (Red circle): Anniversaries
- ◻ (AM events) and ◼ (PM events) indicate the day's events.
- When a new calendar entry is added to the date with the cursor, the number of Scheduled events or an icon appears following **am** or **pm** at the bottom of the Calendar.





By Week

- **When National Holidays are changed or newly designated**
Update the default National Holidays registered according to the law of “the National Holidays and revision of the Welfare Law for the Aged (Article 59 of Year of Heisei 13, 2001)”. (As of November 2004)

Switching Weekly and Monthly Views

Default Setting Monthly Display

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Schedule*
- 2 Select *Monthly Display* or *Weekly Display* from the **Function menu**

Function Menus from the Calendar

The following options are available from the Function menu of the Calendar:
Different Function menus appear depending on the saved items.

Function Menu Item	Description
New	Save a new Scheduled event, Holiday or Anniversary
Monthly Display/Weekly Display	Switch monthly and weekly views
Icon Display	Select an icon to see a list of Scheduled events with the same icon
User Icon Setting	Select <Not stored> and select an image from a folder
Number of Scheduled Events	The number of saved entries appears

Function Menu Item	Description
Delete Past	Delete all past entries at once by type
Delete All	Delete all entries at once by type
Reset Holiday	Choosing YES restores all Holiday settings to their defaults
Add Desktop Icon	Add a Calendar to Stand-by Display as a Desktop Icon for quick access

■ Saving Scheduled Events


Set an Alarm to sound an alarm tone or play an animation for the scheduled date and time, and display an alarm message.

1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Schedule*

2 Press  **New** and select *Schedule*

3 Select an item and edit the event

To set a starting date and time of a scheduled event


Select  in the first line and enter date and time

To set an ending date and time of a scheduled event

Select  in the second line and enter date and time

To set Repeat

① Select  and select an option


② For **Weekly**, select the day(s) of the week and press  **Finish**

To set an Alarm


① Select  and select an option

② If selecting **On/Set Time**, enter time in minutes before the Scheduled time

To set an Alarm Tone

Select  and select an alarm tone from a folder or choose **OFF**

To set an alarm message

① Select  and enter a message (up to 256 Full Pitch or 512 Half Pitch characters)

② Select an icon

4 Press  **Finish**

Tip

• Options for Repeat

1 time: An event is set for only one day.

Daily: An Alarm goes off at the set time every day.

Weekly/Monthly/Yearly: An Alarm goes off at selected days of the week, the same date every month or the same date every year.

• When an Alarm is set

 appears on the Main Display if the Alarm is set for today.  appears if the Alarm is set for a later date.

• When different days of the week are assigned to a recurring event

The days of the week assigned to a weekly event precede the start date's day of the week, applying the Repeat to the first day of the week after the set start date.

■ When the Time Set for an Alarm Comes

The Alarm tone sounds repeatedly for five minutes and an animation appears on the Main Display and Sub Display.

To stop the tone, press any key. Press a key again to close the alarm message.



The Alarm does not work if the handset is turned off. If an Alarm does not start due to another operation, (Missed Alarm) appears on Stand-by Display. However, if Alarm Settings are set to **Alarm Preferred**, the Alarm tone sounds even during other operations.

■ Saving a Holiday/Anniversary

- 1 Press and select *Accessory* → *Schedule*
- 2 Press **New** and select *Holiday* or *Anniversary*
- 3 Select an item and edit the event

To set year, month and day

Select and enter year, month and day

To set Repeat

Select and select an option

To set a message

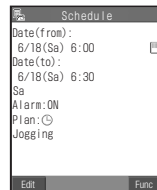
Select and enter a message (up to 10 Full Pitch or 20 Half Pitch characters)

- 4 Press **Finish**

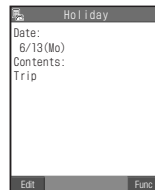
■ Checking Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary

View saved entries from a list of entries for the day or from details.

- 1 Press and select *Accessory* → *Schedule*
- 2 Select the date
- 3 Select an item



Schedule Details



Holiday Details



Anniversary Details



■ Function Menu from Details

The following options are available from the Function menu of a list of entries for the day, details or Icon Display. Different Function menus appear depending on the Schedule type.


Function Menu Item	Description
New	Save a new Scheduled event, Holiday or Anniversary
Edit	Edit details
Copy	Save the open Scheduled event as a new event
Display Calendar	Return to the Calendar with today's date from the Icon Display
Icon Display	Select an icon to see a list of Scheduled events under the same icon type
User Icon Setting	Select <Not stored> and select an image from a folder
Release Secret	Choosing YES cancels secret
Ir Exchange	Send data to an infrared communication compatible device (📡 "Infrared Data Communication")
Save to Data Folder	Choose YES to create a vfile and save it to the Other Files of the Data Folder
Delete One	Delete the open Scheduled event
Delete Past	Delete all entries in the past at once
Delete Selected	Select and delete Scheduled events
Delete All	Delete all entries at once by type

■ Editing Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary

Perform the same steps to edit as to save.

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Schedule*
- 2 Select a date
- 3 Highlight an entry and press  **Edit**
- 4 Select and edit items
- 5 Press  **Finish**

☾ Tip ☽

- **If changing the starting date and time, or Repeat that have already been set**
A confirmation appears to overwrite the entry after Step 5. Choose **YES**.
- **To edit from details**
After Step 2, select an entry and open details then press  **Edit**.

■ Deleting Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary

■ Delete One Entry, All Entries in the Past or Selected Entries

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Schedule*
- 2 Select a date

3 Use the Function menu to delete


To delete only the highlighted entry

Select **Delete One** and choose **YES**

To delete all entries up to the previous day

- 1 Select **Delete Past**
- 2 Select an item, enter the Security Code and choose **YES**

To select and delete more than one entry

- 1 Select **Delete Selected**
- 2 Select entries
- 3 Press  **Finish**, enter the Security Code and choose **YES**



Tip



When using the Function menu from entry details or Calendar

Delete One, **Delete Past** and **Delete Selected** are available from the Function menu of entry details. **Delete Past** and **Delete All** are available from the Function menu of the Calendar.

15

Using Accessories

■ Deleting All Entries

- 1 Press  and select  **Accessory** → **Schedule**
- 2 Select **Delete All** from the Function menu
- 3 Select an item, enter the Security Code and choose **YES**

Using the Alarm Clock

An Alarm sounds at the set time of the Alarm Clock.

■ Setting the Alarm Clock

Save up to three settings. Only one of them can be used at a time.


- 1 Press  and select  **Accessory** → **Alarm Clock**


- 2 Press  **Set**

When Nothing is Saved

Proceed to Step 3

When Settings are Saved

Highlight **<Not stored>**, press  **Edit** and proceed to Step 3




- 3 Enter activating time
- 4 If setting Repeat and selecting **Weekly**, select days of the week and press  **Finish**
- 5 Select an alarm tone from a folder or choose **OFF**

When selecting an alarm tone

Proceed to Step 6

When setting Alarm Tone to OFF




Proceed to Step 7

- 6 Press  to adjust the Alarm Volume and press  **Set**
- 7 Set Snooze
- 8 Press  **Set**
- 9 Select a setting

■ Enabling/Disabling an Alarm Setting

Select a saved setting to make it valid. To turn the Alarm Clock off, choose **OFF**.

Default Setting OFF

- 1 Press  and select  **Accessory** → **Alarm Clock**
- 2 Press  **Set**
- 3 Select a setting or choose **OFF**

Tip

- **To view a setting**


After Step 2, highlight the setting and select **Display Detail** from the Function menu.

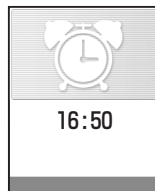
- **While Alarm Clock is set**


 appears on the Main Display if the Alarm is set for today.  appears if the Alarm is set for a later date.

■ When the Time Set for an Alarm Comes



The alarm clock appears on the Main Display and Sub Display. When the Snooze Setting is set to **OFF**, the alarm goes off for five minutes. When the Snooze Setting is set to **ON**, an alarm goes off every five minutes for one minute (this will be repeated up to six times) until Snooze is turned off.

To stop the alarm, press any key. When the Snooze Setting is set to **OFF**, press a key again to close the alarm clock display. When the Snooze Setting is set to **ON**, press  to turn off Snooze.



If the Alarm did not go off due to another operation in progress,  (Missed Alarm) appears on Stand-by Display. However, if Alarm Settings are set to Alarm Preferred not **Operation Preferred**, the Alarm goes off even the other operations in progress.

■ Deleting an Alarm Clock Setting

1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Alarm Clock*

2 Press  **Set**

3 Use the Function menu to delete

To delete only the highlighted setting

Select *Release One* and choose *YES*

To delete all settings

① Select *Release All*

② Enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

Using Tasks

Save entries to Tasks to be notified with an Alarm on the Due Date. Also, organise entries per category or set priorities to manage Tasks.

■ Saving Entries in Tasks


Save up to 100 entries. After saving an entry in Tasks, an alarm tone sounds or a message appears on the Due Date.

1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Tasks*

2 Press  **New** or select *New* from the Function menu

3 Select and configure items

To set a description

Select  and enter a description (up to 100 Full Pitch or 200 Half Pitch characters)

To set the Due Date


① Select  and select an item

② If selecting *Enter Date*, enter the date. If selecting *Choose Date*, select a date

To set a Priority

Select  and select an option

To set a Category


Select  and select an option

To set an Alarm

① Select  and select an option




② If selecting *On/Set Time*, enter time in minutes before the Scheduled time

To set an Alarm Tone

Select  and select an alarm tone from a folder or choose *OFF*

4 Press  **Finish**

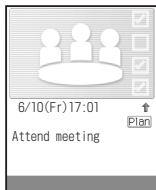
Tip


-  **New**
If even one entry is saved in Tasks, **Edit** appears instead of **New** on the display in Step 2.
- **The Main Display with an Alarm Set**
 appears if the Alarm is set for today.  appears if Alarm is set for a later date.

■ When the Time Set for an Alarm Comes

The Alarm goes off for five minutes and a reminder appears on the Main Display and Sub Display.



To stop the alarm, press any key. Press a key again to close the reminder.



The Alarm is not available if the handset is turned off. If an Alarm is not activated due to another operation in progress,  (Missed Alarm) appears on Stand-by Display. However, if Alarm Settings are set to **Alarm Preferred**, the Alarm is activated even during other operations.

■ Checking Entries in Tasks


View an entry from a list of Tasks or from details.

1 Press  and select  **Accessory** → **Tasks** to open the list

2 Select an entry to open details

■ Function Menu in the List and Details







The following options are available from the Function menu of the list or details. Different Function menus appear depending on the display and saved items.

Function Menu Item	Description
New	Save a new entry in Tasks
Edit	Edit items
Status	Change the status of Tasks entries
Category Display	Select a Category to open a list of entries of the same category
Sort/Filter	Select conditions for sorting or extracting to reorganise the list
Add Desktop Icon	Add a schedule to Stand-by Display as a Desktop Icon for quick access
Ir Exchange	Send data to an infrared communication compatible device ( "Infrared Data Communication")
Save to Data Folder	Choose YES to create a vfile and save it to Other Files of the Data Folder



Function Menu Item	Description
Delete One	Delete the highlighted or open Tasks entry
Delete Selected	Select Tasks entries to delete
Delete Completed	Delete only Tasks entries with Completed status
Delete All	Delete all entries from Tasks

■ Editing Entries in Tasks

Perform the same steps to edit as to save.



- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Tasks*
- 2 Highlight an entry and press  
- 3 Select and edit items
- 4 Press  

☰ Tip ☰

- **To edit from details**
After Step 1, select an entry and open details then press  .
- **To edit Status**
Select *Status* from the Function menu of the list or details. Select one from *Plan*, *Acceptance*, *Request*, *Provisional Plan*, *Confirmation*, *Reject*, *Completion* and *Substitution*.
- **To edit the Completion Date**

Select *Status* from the Function menu of the list or details, select *Completion* and edit Completion Date.



■ Deleting Entries in Tasks

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Tasks*
- 2 Highlight an entry and delete it using the Function menu

To delete only the highlighted entry

Select *Delete One* and choose *YES*

To select and delete more than one entry

- ① Select *Delete Selected*
- ② Select entries
- ③ Press  , enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

To delete only completed entries

- ① Select *Delete Completed*
- ② Enter the Security Code and choose *YES*

To delete all entries from Tasks

- ① Select *Delete All*
- ② Enter the Security Code and choose *YES*





☰ Tip ☰

When using the Function menu from details *Delete One* from the Function menu from details can also be used in the same way.



Text Memo

Create a Text Memo (up to 256 Full Pitch or 512 Half Pitch characters). A created Text Memo can be used to enter message text or an alarm message for Schedule. Save up to 10 Text Memos. Text Memos can be accessed from Text Memo in the Accessory menu or Templates in the Data Folder menu.

■ Saving a Text Memo

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Text Memo*
- 2 Highlight *<Not stored>* and press  
- 3 Enter a memo text

Tip

- **To edit a saved Text Memo**
Highlight a Text Memo in Step 2 and press  .
- **To categorize a Text Memo**
Select *Category* from the Function menu of the list or details.

■ Viewing/Using a Text Memo

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Text Memo* to open the list





2 Select a Text Memo to open details

To view or use Text Memo from the Data Folder



- ① Press  and select  *Data Folder* → *Templates* → *Phone*
- ② Perform Step 2

■ Function Menu in the List and Details

The following options are available from the Function menu of the list or details. Different Function menus appear depending on the display and saved items.

Function Menu Item	Description
Edit Memorandums	Edit the memo text
Create Message	Create a message using a memo text
Edit Schedule	Create a Scheduled event using the text as an alarm message
Ir Exchange	Send data to an infrared communication compatible device ( "Infrared Data Communication")
Save to Data Folder	Choose YES to create a vfile and save it to Other Files of the Data Folder
Text Memo Information	Created date and time, the last updated date and Category appear
Category	Select a category
Delete One	Delete the highlighted or displayed memo text ( "Deleting a Text Memo")
Delete Selected	Delete the selected memo text ( "Deleting a Text Memo")
Delete All	Delete all memo text ( "Deleting a Text Memo")
Add Desktop Icon	Add the Text Memo list to Stand-by Display as a Desktop Icon for quick access


■ Deleting a Text Memo

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Text Memo*
- 2 Highlight a Text Memo and delete it using the Function menu

To delete only the highlighted Text Memo

Select *Delete One* and choose *YES*

To select and delete more than one Text Memo



- ① Select *Delete Selected*
- ② Select Text Memos
- ③ Press  **Finish** and choose *YES*

To delete all Text Memos

Select *Delete All* and choose *YES*





Tip

- **When using the Function menu from details**
A Text Memo can also be deleted in the same way from the Function menu of details.
- **To delete a Text Memo from the Data Folder**
 - ① Press  and select  *Data Folder* → *Templates* → *Phone*
 - ② Perform Step 2

Voice Recorder

Record your message for up to 20 seconds in standby. Record only one message including Voice Memo during a call. A new recording overwrites the existing message.

■ Recording with the Voice Recorder in Standby

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Voice Recorder*
- 2 Choose *YES*

Five seconds before recording ends

The recording automatically ends after a beep sounds when remaining recording time is five seconds.




To cancel recording

Press  **Stop** or  **CLEAR BACK**

■ Playing a Recording

- 1 Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Play/Erase Message*
- 2 Highlight a recording and press  **Play**

Tip

- **To delete a recording**
During playback, press  **Erase** or highlight a recording in Step 2, select **Delete One** from the Function menu and choose **YES**.
- **To delete all recordings from the Voice Recorder and Record Message**
Select **Delete All** from the Function menu and choose **YES**.
- **To play the Voice Recorder in standby**
Perform the following steps to play the recording in the Voice Recorder without using a menu after recordings in Record Message are played with the latest one first:
 - ① Press the side key .
 - ② During the playback, press the side key  repeatedly until the recording in Voice Recorder starts playing

Note

Selecting **Delete All** deletes all recordings in Voice Recorder and Record Message (☞ “Advanced Functions”).

Calculator

Perform 4 arithmetic operations with up to 10-digits.

1 Press  and select  **Accessory** → **Calculator**

2 **Calculate**

To enter numbers

Use the keypad

To enter +, -, x, ÷, =

Use the Multi Selector

To enter a decimal point

Press  

To delete the result or a number

Press 

Tip

- **If the result exceeds 10-digits**
An error occurs and **.E** appears.
- **If using the Calculator often**
Select **Add Desktop Icon** from the Function menu.

Access Reader

Scan printed phone numbers, e-mail addresses or URLs with the handset Camera and save them as text data. Make a call, send a message or connect to the Internet using this text data.

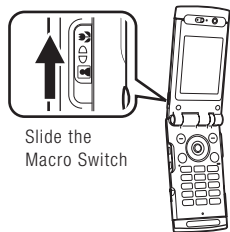
Half Pitch Roman alphabet and numeric characters, and some Half Pitch symbols can be recognized. Full Pitch characters cannot be recognized.

STEP 1 Scan and Save Text

STEP 2 Use Text Data

STEP 1 Scan and Save Text

Save up to 8 text strings and up to 256 characters per string. Use the Macro Switch to scan text. Hold the handset still when scanning.



1 Press and select *Accessory* → *Access Reader*

When no text is saved

Proceed to Step 2

When a text string has already been saved

Select *<New>* and proceed to Step 2

If eight text strings have already been saved

Select an unnecessary string, press *Select* and choose *YES* to overwrite

Proceed to Step 2

2 Frame the text string in the recognition area



Even when the text string does not fit in the recognition area, the text string outside the area will be scanned in Step 5.

To use zoom

Press to zoom in and to zoom out

3 Press *Record* to scan and view the scanned text

To retry scanning

Press *CLEAR BACK*

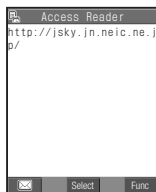
To correct the scanned text

Move the cursor to a character and press a number next to an alternative, or press *Characters* to set Alphabetical Input Mode or Numerical Input Mode and enter characters

4 Press *Set*

5 Repeat Steps 2 to 3 to scan the remaining text string, choose *YES* and press *Set*

6 Select *Store* from the Function menu



Details Window

The example above is the URL of NEC SUPER TOWN.

To correct before saving

Select *Edit* from the Function menu and correct

■ If a Text String Is not Scanned Accurately

Each press of ON / OFF or the side key turns the Light on or off. The following options are available from the Function menu before scanning or saving: Usually, use Auto Setting for both Recognition Mode and Negative/Positive Mode.

Function Menu Item	Description
Recognition Mode	Select a type of text string.
Negative/Positive Mode	Select the type of image. For dark text on light-colour background, select <i>Positive Fix</i> . For light-colour on dark background, select <i>Negative Fix</i> .

STEP 2 Use the Text String

Select an option from the Function menu of the list or details or press

To connect to the Internet

Select *Internet* from the Function Menu

To create a message

Press or select *Create Message* from the Function menu

To make a voice or video call

Select *Dialling* from the Function menu and select a type of call

To save an e-mail address or phone number to the Phone Book

Select *Store Mail Address* or *Store Phone Number* from the Function menu

To save a URL to Bookmarks

Select *Add Bookmark* from the Function menu

To search the Phone Book using the text string

Select *Search Contact* from the Function menu



- **To open a list of scanned data**

Perform one of the following:

- Press and select **Accessory** → **Access Reader**
- Press from details
- Select **List** from the Function menu of details

- **To open details of scanned data**

Perform one of the following:

- Perform STEP 1
- Select a text string in the list
- Select **Detail** from the Function menu of the list

- **To access the list quickly**

Select **Add Desktop Icon** from the Function menu of the list.

- **To re-scan the saved text string**

- ① Open details of the text data
- ② Press and choose **YES**
- ③ Perform Steps 2 to 6 in STEP 1

- **To delete text strings**

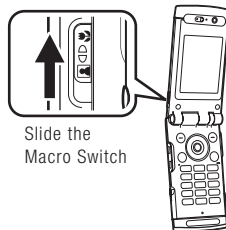
Select **Delete One** or **Delete All** from the Function menu and choose **YES**.

Bar Code Reader

The handset Camera scans a barcode (QR Code*) which enables you to access data such as a phone number, e-mail address, image or melody. The data can be saved and used repeatedly.

* QR Code is a two-dimensional code that has data in vertical and horizontal directions. The data may be separated to the several QR Codes. The handset supports QR Codes only (Unable to read other bar codes and two-dimensional codes).

Slide the Macro Switch as shown below and hold the handset still when scanning. Scanned data can be immediately used or saved (up to five entries).



1 Press and select **Accessory** → **Bar Code Reader**

When no data are saved

Proceed to Step 2

When data has been saved

Select <New> and proceed to Step 2

If 5 items have already been saved

Select <New> and choose **YES**, or perform the following steps:



- ① Highlight data, select **Delete One** from the Function menu and choose **YES**
- ② Select <New> and proceed to Step 2

2 Frame the bar code in the recognition area





Try to make the bar code fill the display while remaining focused.

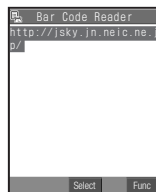
To use zoom

Press  to zoom in and  to zoom out

To use the Light

Press  **ON** / **OFF** or the side key  to turn the Light on or off


3 Press **Record** to scan and view the scanned data



Scanned Data

The example above is the URL of NEC SUPER TOWN.

To re-scan

- ① Press  and choose **YES**
- ② Perform steps from “If five items have already been saved” in Step 1

To scan divided bar code data

Choose **OK** and repeat Steps 2 and 3 to read the all data

4 Save or use the data


To save the scanned data

Select **Add** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

To save a URL to Bookmarks

Select **Add Bookmark** from the Function menu

To add to Phone Book

Select **Create Contact**, or select **Create Contact** from the Function menu ( “Phone Book”)

To save an image

- ① Select an image, *Save File* then a saving location
- ② If a confirmation appears, choose **YES** or **NO**. If choosing **YES**, select an item

To save a melody

- ① Select an icon for the melody and *Save File* then choose **YES**
- ② Select a saving location. If a confirmation appears, choose **YES** or **NO**. If choosing **YES**, select an item

To play a melody

Select an icon of the melody and select *Play Melody*

To connect to the Internet

Select a URL and choose **OK** (👉 “Basic Web Operations”)

To create a message

Select *Create Message* or an e-mail address (👉 “Sending Messages”)

To make a voice or video call

Select a phone number and a type of the call to dial (👉 “Basic Handset Operations” or “Video Call”)

To copy text from the decoded result

Select *Copy* from the Function menu and specify starting and ending points

Tip

- **To open a list of scanned data**

Perform one of the following

- Press  and select  *Accessory* → *Bar Code Reader*
- Press  from the decoded result
- Select *List* from the Function menu of the decoded result

- **To open the decoded result of saved data**

Select data from the list.

- **To edit a title that appears in the list**

Select *Edit Title* from the Function menu of the list.

- **To access the list quickly**

Select *Add Desktop Icon* from the Function menu of the list.

- **To delete data**

Select *Delete One* or *Delete All* from the Function menu of the list and choose **YES**.

Using the Light

Turn on the Light while in standby to use it as a flashlight.

1 Press the side key  for 1+ seconds

2 Press any key to turn the Light off

 **Tip**

The Light goes off automatically when

Approx 30 seconds after the Lamp lights up or when receiving a call or message.

 **Note**

Do not point the light close to someone's eyes. Avoid staring at the light when lit. Doing so may cause a loss of visual acuity. Also, the light may cause temporary blindness or surprise which can cause accidents.


Advanced Functions

Advanced Operations during a Call

■ Pause Dial

Send push tones to remotely control a home answering machine, send messages to pagers or use other user services that require push tones.

■ Saving Pause Dial

Save push tones in advance. 0 to 9, # and pause (press  for 1+ seconds to enter "p") can be saved. Push tones up to a pause are sent as a chunk. Only one entry can be saved (up to 128 characters).

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *Pause Dial*

2 Press   and enter data to dial



Tip


To delete data from Pause Dial

- 1 Perform Step 1
- 2 Select *Delete* from the Function menu and choose *YES*



■ Sending Pause Dial

Open and send the saved Pause Dial.

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *Pause Dial*

2 Press   and enter the phone number


To use the Phone Book





- 1 Find a Phone Book contact by pressing  or  and selecting a search method
- 2 Highlight the phone number icon

To use Redial

Press  and select an entry in Redial

To use Received Calls

Press  and select an entry in Received Calls

3 Press   or   to dial

4 Press   or   repeatedly to send push tones

Tip

To send push tones all at once

- 1 Perform Steps 1 to 3
- 2 After the line is connected, press  for 1+ seconds and select *Send at One Time*

■ Noise Reduction

Set Noise Reduction to **ON** to suppress ambient noise and hear the other party's voice more clearly.

Default Setting ON

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Call Settings*
→ *Noise Reduction*

2 Select an option

■ Call Data

Set Call Data to **ON** to display the duration of the current voice or video call.

Default Setting ON

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Call Data* →
Call Time Display

2 Select an option

Advanced Dialling Options



■ Prefix Settings

Save a specific number such as 184 as a Prefix to dial with the number in front of a phone number. Prefix can be added when dialling from Phone Book or Received Calls.

■ Saving a Prefix

Save up to 7 entries.

Default Setting 国際発信 (International access code, 0046010)

1 Press  and select  *Settings* →
Other Settings → *Prefix Settings*

2 Highlight <Not stored> and press  

3 Enter a Prefix name (up to 8 Full Pitch or 16 Half Pitch characters)

4 Enter a number (up to 10-digits)

Tip

To delete a Prefix

- 1 Perform Step 1
- 2 Highlight a Prefix, select **Delete One** from the Function menu and choose **YES**
To delete all Prefixes, select **Delete All**

■ Dialling with Prefix



- 1 On the display with a phone number entered, select **Prefix** from the Function menu
- 2 Select a Prefix
- 3 Press 
To make a video call
Press  

Answering Calls with Message Recorder




■ Setting Record Message

When setting Record Message to **ON**, select an Answer Message and Ringing Time.

Default Setting Record Message: OFF Answer Message: Japanese 1
 Ringing Time: 8 seconds

- 1 Press  and select  **Accessory** →
Record Message
- 2 Choose **ON**
- 3 Select an Answer Message
- 4 Enter a Ringing Time

Tip


- **To play an Answer Message**
Highlight an Answer Message and press  .
- **To use a message you recorded**
Record a voice using Voice Announce in advance. The recording can be set as an Answer Message.
- **While Record Message is set**
An indicator, such as , indicating the number of recordings appears on the Main Display.
- **To cancel Record Message**
 - 1 Perform Step 1
 - 2 Choose **OFF**
- **To give Record Message priority over Voice Mail or Call Forwarding**
If setting these concurrently, set Record Message ringing time shorter than Voice Mail and Call Forwarding.

■ Playing Recordings in Record Message

1 Press  and select  *Accessory* →
Play/Erse Message

2 Highlight a message and press  



To play the next message (or Voice Recorder)

Press the side key  during the playback to play the next recording

◀ Tip ▶

To play a recorded message in Record Message (or Voice Recorder) in standby quickly

Perform the following steps without using a menu to play the latest recordings in Record Message first in order:

- 1 Press the side key 
(the latest recording in Record Message will be played)
- 2 Press the side key  during the playback to play the next recording

■ Deleting Recordings in Record Message

After five messages are recorded in Record Message, no more messages can be recorded. Delete unnecessary messages.

1 Press  and select  *Accessory* →
Play/Erse Message

2 Highlight a message and delete it using the Function menu

To delete only the highlighted message

Select *Delete One* and choose *YES*

To delete all messages

Select *Delete Record Message* and choose *YES*

To delete all messages in Record Message and Voice Recorder

Select *Delete All* and choose *YES*

◀ Tip ▶


To delete a message while playing

Press  *Erase* during playback and choose *YES*.

◀ Note ▶

Performing steps to Delete All erases recording in Record Message and Voice Recorder while in standby and during a call (☎ “Using Accessories”).

Setting Priority of the Alarm

Set the priority of alarms of Schedule, Alarm Clock and Tasks. If Operation Preferred is set, an alarm is activated only in standby. If an Alarm does not start due to other operations in progress, the Missed Alarm Desktop Icon  appears on Stand-by Display. If Alarm Preferred is set, an alarm is activated even while you have another call/operation in progress.

Default Setting Operation Preferred

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Clock* → *Alarm Settings*

2 Select an option


Shortcut Menu

To access an option, instead of selecting a Main Menu Group, an item and then a sub item, use the Shortcut Menu for quick access.

Accessing a Function Using a Shortcut

1 Press  twice

When the Main Menu screen was not displayed after accessing the Shortcut screen last time

Press  once to open Shortcut

Alternatively in standby

Press 

2 Select a Shortcut

 Tip 



To switch the Shortcut and the Main Menu screen

Each press of  toggles between these screens.

Creating a Shortcut

Create up to 10 Shortcuts.

Default Setting Alarm Clock, Schedule, Calculator, V-applications

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Display Settings* → *Shortcut Menu*

2 Select *<Not stored>*

3 Select a category then an item

 Tip 

To release or initialise Shortcuts

① Perform Step 1

② Highlight a Shortcut and select **Release One** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

To release all: Select **Release All**



To restore the default state: Select **Reset Shortcut**

Subaddress Settings

A subaddress is a number to be added to your handset phone number to communicate with a specific communication device.

Set this setting to ON to use digits after * as a subaddress by treating * as a delimiter.

Default Setting OFF

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Other Settings* → *Subaddress Settings*

2 Select an option

Folding Settings


Use Folding Settings to select handset functions when handset is closed during a call.

Default Setting End the Call

1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Ringtone* → *Fold Settings*

2 Select an option

Call Answering options when folded

- Mute: Cut off the sound and send the alternate image for a video call.
- On Hold: Play the On Hold tone and place the call on hold. An On Hold image is also sent for a video call.
- End the Call: Disconnect the call in the same manner as pressing .

When Mute or On Hold is set, open the handset to return to the call.

Note

When using a Handsfree Headset, folding the handset does not affect the call. During a video call using the Camera, folding the handset switches to the alternate image.

Using a Handsfree Headset

Open the Earphone Jack cover and insert the Handsfree Headset (an optional item) plug to the Jack.

Making a Call Using the Switch of the Handsfree Headset

Make a call to a Phone Book contact with the Memory Number 001 by only pressing the switch of the Handsfree Headset.

1 Press the switch for 1+ seconds (until the tone sounds once) to start a call

- 2 Press the switch for 1+ seconds (until the tone sounds twice) to end the call

■ Answering a Call Using the Switch of the Handsfree Headset

- 1 Press the switch for 1+ seconds (until the tone sounds once) to answer the call while receiving a call
- 2 Press the switch for 1+ seconds (until the tone sounds twice) to end the call



■ Using a Handsfree Headset

- Insert the plug securely. If the plug is loose, you may not hear the voice.
- Connecting a Handsfree Headset while receiving a call may answer the call.

■ Automatic Answer

Customise the setting so that incoming voice or video calls are answered without pressing the switch. Set this option to **ON** to answer a call automatically and enter the Ringing Time.

Default Setting OFF (when ON, Ringing Time: 6 seconds)



- 1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **External Option** → **Automatic Answer**

- 2 Select an option and enter a Ringing Time if choosing **ON**

Checking the Use of the Memory Space

Check the following information:

- The number of contacts in Phone Books (on the handset and USIM Card) and the number of images and videos saved in Phone Book contacts
- The free and used space with sent and received messages
- The free and used space by Web
- The free and used space per default folder of the Data Folder

- 1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Other Settings** → **Memory Check**

- 2 Use  to check the space

Data Communication Using External Devices

Connect the handset and a personal computer using either a USB cable to perform packet data exchange or 64K data exchange.

Required Devices for Data Exchange

- The 802N handset
- Vodafone Global Standard USB Cable (optional item)
- USB Driver (included with the handset)
- A Personal Computer*

* For requirements, refer to the “インストールマニュアル(Installation Manual, Japanese only)” packed with the USB driver.

Before Performing Data Exchange

- Before using the Vodafone Global Standard USB cable, the USB driver must be installed on the personal computer. For details, refer to the “インストールマニュアル (Installation Manual, Japanese only)”.
- For connecting the personal computer and the Vodafone Global Standard USB cable, refer to the “インストールマニュアル (Installation Manual, Japanese only)”.
- For communication settings of the personal computer, refer to the guidebook of your service provider or the instruction manual of your

personal computer. For providers offering this data exchange service, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

- If using an “Access Internet” that does not require a service provider for data exchange, check access points. For more details, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

Note

Perform data exchange where signals are stable.

Optional Services

Optional Services Overview

The following optional services are offered:

Service	Description
Call Forwarding	Diverts incoming calls to a set number.
Voice Mail	Diverts incoming calls automatically to the Voice Mail Centre. The callers' messages are stored in the Voice Mailbox.
Call Waiting	Places a voice call on hold to take/make another voice call. Switch between parties.
Call Barring	Restricts making or receiving calls.
Caller ID	Your phone number appears on the receiver's handset and/or the caller's phone number appears on your phone.

For more details and subscriptions for optional services, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

Using Optional Services

Access optional services from the handset or from a landline.



Using Menus for Optional Services

Use menus to operate Optional Services. "Call Forwarding/Voice Mail", "Call Waiting" and "Call Barring" sections explain using menus.

Service Codes

If Services are activated or deactivated frequently, use Service Codes. For easier access, save frequently used Service Codes (up to 10 codes) in advance.

Saving Service Codes

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Network Service* → *Direct Input Service*
- 2 Highlight *<Not stored>* and select *Add New Service from the Function menu*
- 3 Enter a Service Name (up to 10 Full Pitch or 20 Half Pitch characters)
- 4 Enter a Service Code (see Tip "Service Codes to be entered") and choose *YES*



Tip

• **Service Codes to be entered**

Service	Option	Service Code
Call Forwarding/ Voice Mail	Activate	→ Forwarding Options Code ¹ → → Forwarding Number → → Transmission types ² → (If Call Forwarding on No Reply is set, press and select a Ringing time from among 5, 10, 15, 20, 25 and 30) →
	Deactivate	→ → Forwarding Options Code ¹ →
Call Waiting	Activate	→ → →
	Deactivate	→ → →
Call Barring	Activate	→ Barring Options Code ³ → → Network Password →
	Deactivate	→ Barring Options Code ³ → → Network Password →
	Change Code	→ → → → → Current Network Password → → New Network Password → → New Network Password →

1 Forwarding Options Code

Call Forwarding Unconditional:

Call Forwarding Busy:

Call Forwarding on not Reachable:

Call Forwarding on No Reply:

2 Transmission types

Voice call:

Video call and 64K data exchange:

3 Barring Options Code

Barring of All Outgoing Calls:

Barring of All Outgoing International Calls:

Barring of All Outgoing International Calls except to the Home Country:

Barring of All Incoming Calls:

Barring of All Incoming Calls when roaming outside the Home Country:

• **To edit a Saved Service Code**

In Step 2, highlight an item and select **Edit** from the Function menu.

• **To delete a saved Service Code**

① Perform Step 1

② Highlight a Service Code, select **Delete One** from the Function menu and choose **YES**

To delete all Service Codes, select **Delete All** and choose **YES**

■ Operating with Service Codes

1 Press and select **Settings** → **Network Service** → **Direct Input Service**

2 **Select a Service**

3 Press **Send**



Tip

Operating without Saving Service Codes

Enter a Service Code (☎ Tip “Service Codes to be Entered”) in standby and press .

Operating from a Landline

When you do not have the handset with you, or while the handset is out of the service area, use a landline to access services. For operations from a landline, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

Call Forwarding/Voice Mail

The following forwarding types are available:

Type	Description
CFU (Call Forwarding Unconditional)	All calls are forwarded. The handset does not ring or vibrate before a call is forwarded and Missed Call notice does not appear.
CFB (Call Forwarding Busy)	Calls are forwarded while receiving a call or talking.
CFNRc (Call Forwarding on not Reachable)	Calls are forwarded when the handset power is off or when out of service area.
CFNRy (Call Forwarding on No Reply)	Calls are forwarded if the call is not answered within the set Ringing Time.

Activating Call Forwarding/Voice Mail

Set Call Forwarding by transmission type (voice call, video call or data transmission). Save the Voice Mail Centre number as a forwarding number to use Voice Mail. Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set concurrently. Setting one service invalidates the other service.

1 Press and select **Settings** → **Network Service** → **Call Forwarding**

2 Select a Forwarding type

3 Select **Activate**

4 Select communication type

To activate Call Forwarding for Voice Calls

Select **Voice**

To activate Call Forwarding for Video Calls and 64K Data Communications

Select **Digital**




5 Set forwarding details

To set a forwarding number

① Select **Forwarding Number**

② Enter the phone number

To use Voice Mail

- ① Select **Forwarding Number**
- ② Use , select **Memory Number Search** and enter **000**
- ③ Select **留守番電話センター (Voice Mail Centre)** and press  **Select** then  **Set** while "09066517000" is displayed


To set ringing time for CFNRy

- ① Select **Ringing Time**
- ② Select time in seconds

Proceed to Step 6 if customising default is not necessary

6 Select *Activate* and choose *YES*

Tip

- **To retrieve a forwarding number from Phone Book**
Use  from **Forwarding Number?** to search the Phone Book.
- **To enter Voice Mail Centre number**
Select **Forwarding Number** in Step 5 and enter **09066517000**.
- **To view the settings**
 - ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
 - ② Select **Check Status**

Note

When the Voice mailbox number is set as a forwarding number, video calls cannot be forwarded.

Forwarding a Call Manually



When CFB is set for Call Forwarding or Voice Mail, select **Call Forwarding** from the Function menu while receiving a call to forward the call manually. If Call Waiting is also activated, perform the same steps while the Call Waiting tone sounds.

Voice Mailbox Number

To use Voice Mail, the Voice mailbox number must be set as a forwarding number. By default, the phone number "09066517000" is saved in the handset Phone Book under Memory Number "000".

Deactivating Call Forwarding/Voice Mail

Deactivate a service per incoming type.

- 1 Press  and select  **Settings** → **Network Service** → **Call Forwarding**
- 2 Select a forwarding condition
- 3 Select **Deactivate**
- 4 Select an incoming type

To deactivate for voice calls

Select **Voice**

To deactivate for video calls and 64K data exchange

Select **Digital**

5 Select *Deactivate* and choose *YES*




Tip



To deactivate all services at once

- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Select *Deactivate All CF* and choose *YES*

■ Playing Voice Mail Messages

When there is a message at the Voice Mail Centre,  appears at the top of the Main Display and the Sub Display.

A Desktop Icon also appears.

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Network Service* → *Voice Mail*


- 2 Select *Play Messages* and choose *YES*




Tip



To delete  from the top of the Main Display or Sub Display

Erase the message or perform the following steps:

- ① Perform Step 1
 - ② Select *Erase Icon* and choose *YES*
-  remains until the message is played even after changing USIM Card or Reset Settings.

■ Setting the Voice Mailbox Number



Default Setting  1416

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Network Services* → *Voice Mail*
- 2 Select *Voice Mailbox Number*
- 3 Enter a phone number and choose *YES*

Call Waiting

Call Waiting is available for only voice calls.

■ Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Network Service* → *Call Waiting*
- 2 Select *Activate* or *Deactivate* and choose *YES*






Tip

To view the settings





- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Select *Check Status*

■ Receiving a Second Call

Place the first voice call on hold and answer the second voice call. Parties can be switched.

- 1 **The Call Waiting tone sounds when a call arrives during a call**
- 2 Press  or  **Answer** to talk with the second caller
- 3 Press  to switch parties

Tip

- **If  is pressed or the handset is closed during Call Waiting**
The current call is disconnected and the call on hold rings. Press  or  **Answer** to answer the call. However, depending on the Folding Settings, the call may not be disconnected when the handset is folded.
- **When the other party ends the active call**
A tone sounds. Press  to talk with the party on hold.

Note

Call Waiting is available for only voice calls not for video calls.

Call Barring

Use the following options to restrict incoming or outgoing calls or SMS:



Item	Description	
Barring of Outgoing	BAOC (Barring of All Outgoing Calls)	Bars all outgoing calls and SMS except emergency calls
	BAOIC (Barring of All Outgoing International Calls)	Bars all international outgoing calls and SMS
	BAOIC-exHC (Barring of All Outgoing International Calls except to the Home Country)	Bars international outgoing calls and SMS except to Home Area (coverage area of the contracted carrier)
Barring of Incoming	BAIC (Barring of All Incoming Calls)	Bars all incoming calls and SMS
	BAIC-Roam (Barring of All Incoming Calls when roaming outside the Home Country)	Bars all incoming calls and SMS except in the Home Area (coverage area of the contracted carrier)

To set Call Barring, the Network Password (the 4-digit number selected at initial service subscription) is required.

Note

If the Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, the settings cannot be configured. In this case, the Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For more information, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

Setting Call Barring



- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Network Service* → *Call Barring* → *Barring of Outgoing or Barring of Incoming*
- 2 Select an option
- 3 Select *Activate* or *Deactivate*
- 4 Enter the Network Password

Tip

To view the status



- ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
- ② Select *Check Status*

Deactivating All Call Barring

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Network Service* → *Call Barring* → *Deactivate All Call Barring*
- 2 Enter the Network Password

Changing the Network Password

The Network Password (4-digit) can be changed.

- 1 Press  and select  *Settings* → *Network Service* → *Call Barring* → *Set Network Password*
- 2 Enter the current Network Password
- 3 Enter a new Network Password
- 4 Enter the new Network Password again

Caller ID

■ Sending Caller ID

1 Press   



2 Enter a phone number

3 Press 

To make a video call

Press  

■ Hiding Caller ID

1 Press   

2 Enter a phone number

3 Press 

To make a video call

Press  

Vodafone live!

Before Using Vodafone live!

■ Vodafone live! Services

Use Vodafone live! services to exchange multimedia messages with compatible handsets, download sounds and images, as well as V-applications, or browse the Mobile Internet.

For information on communication fees, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

■ Messaging

MMS (Multimedia Messaging Service)

Supports multimedia messaging with Vodafone handsets, PCs, e-mail compatible handsets and PHSs. Text messages as well as images, sounds and videos can be exchanged.

* A separate subscription is required to use MMS.

SMS (Short Message Service)

Supports short text messaging with Vodafone handsets.

A phone number is used as an address.

Tip

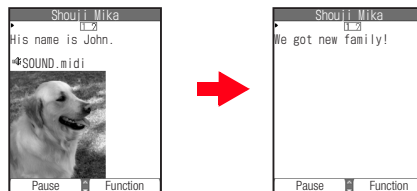
Retry Feature

If the recipient's handset is turned off or out of the service area, sent messages are stored at the Service Centre and automatically resent.

For an explanation of how long the Service Centre repeatedly attempts the delivery, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

■ Slide Show

MMS allows to create a slide show containing text, image and sound.



■ Web

Use Web to access various content to download image or sound files to a Vodafone handset. Also access the Mobile Internet sites via Web.

* A separate subscription is required to use Web.

Using Vodafone live! Menu

Select an item from the Vodafone live! menu to obtain information.

Entering a URL

Enter a URL to access Mobile Internet sites.

■ V-applications

V-applications (Java™ compatible) are exclusively made for Vodafone handsets using Java™.

* A separate subscription is required to download V-applications from the Web.

Downloading V-applications

V-applications can be downloaded using the Web from a site offering V-applications.

Features of V-applications

- **Stand-by V-appli**

Set a V-application to run in standby.

- **Camera Capturing**

V-applications designed for Camera capturing allow capturing or saving images or videos.

- **Ir/Send Via IrDA**











V-applications compatible with IrDA communications allow data exchange with other devices using IrDA communications.

- **Network V-appli**

Connect to a network to enjoy games or obtain real-time information.

■ Network Settings






To access Vodafone live!, retrieve the network connection information from the Service Centre.

If **Start to retrieve Network information?** (ネットワーク自動調整しますか?) appears after pressing , , , , , , , ,  or the side key  for the first time:

1 Press  to connect network

2 Follow the on-screen instructions

Tip



- **To Manually Retrieve Network Information:**
 - ① Press  and select  *Settings* → *Network Settings* → *Retrieve Network Information*
 - ② Enter the Security Code
 - ③ Press  
- **When the handset is closed, press side key  for 1+ seconds to open: *Start to retrieve Network information?* message.**

Note

The Main Menu is not available until Network Information is retrieved.

Customising Handset Address

Change your handset address before the @ to reduce the risk of receiving spam.

- 1 Press   in standby
- 2 Select **My Vodafone**
- 3 Select **オリジナルメール設定・各種メール設定**
(Original Mail Settings/Other Mail Settings)
- 4 Follow the on-screen instructions

Note

Web contents are periodically updated without prior notice.

Receiving Messages

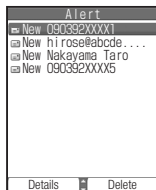
Opening New Messages

A Desktop Icon  appears when a new message arrives.

1 Press  in standby

2 Select 

A list of received messages appears on Alert.



Alert List

3 Highlight an item and press  



Details



4 Press  




Message


Tip

- To delete an item from the Alert List without opening it

Highlight an item and press   on the Alert List, or select **Delete** from the Function menu on the Details Screen. Deleting an item from the Alert List does not delete the message, while deleting an item from the Details deletes the received message from the handset.

-  icon

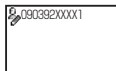
 appears when a new message, content key notice or download failure notice arrives.

 disappears when All Alert List items are checked or when the Received Messages list is opened.

Checking New Messages with the Handset Folded

The ringtone sounds when a new message arrives and a notification of a new message appears on the sub display.

If **Messaging** for the sub display is set to **ON**, **Received message** appears and then, the sender's phone number or address appears on the sub display for 15 seconds. If the sender's name, phone number and/or e-mail address is saved to Phone Book, the saved name appears.




If **Messaging** for the sub display is set to **OFF**, **Received message** appears.



■ Downloading MMS

An MMS notification or the first portion of the MMS is delivered to notify you of a new MMS stored on the Service Centre server when:

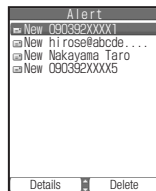
- Auto Receiving is set to **Always defer**
- Auto Receiving is set to **Defer if over 1KB**, **Defer if over 10KB**, or **Defer if over 50KB**, and the size of the message exceeds the set value
- There is no free memory space on the handset
- A Video Call is in progress
- Packet communication is in progress with an external device connected

When MMS is stored at the Service Centre,  appears at the top of the display until the complete message is downloaded.

To download the complete message and/or attachments:

1 Press  in standby

2 Select 



Alert List

3 Highlight an item and press  



Details

4 Press   on the Details Screen

5 Highlight the item and press   if the item appears in the list again

6 Press  



Message



Tip

Downloading MMS from Received Messages

Press  and select **Messaging** → **Received Messages** → highlight an item and press   → Press  .

Operations on Details Screen (Alert)

The following operations are available from the Function menu on Details Screen: Depending on the alert types, the Function menu may not appear.

Function Menu	Description
Delete	Delete an Alert message. Deleting the Alert message deletes the received message.
Forward	Forward the received message to another recipient.
Ignore	Return to the Alert Screen.
Details	Check details of the received message including the timestamp, sender, or size.

Using Received Messages

Reply to or forward a received message.

- The replied message type is the same message type as the original message.
- Default Message Type becomes the forwarded message type. However the message type is changed from SMS to MMS if an entry item unavailable for SMS has been entered.

1 Open the received message text

2 Reply to or forward the message

To reply

Press  .

To forward

Select **Forward** from the Function menu

3 Edit the message and send



Tip

Operations to reply or forward

For details on replying or forwarding, see "Mailbox".

Sending Messages

Creating Messages

Entry Items

The following chart shows available entry items per message type.

	Message	Recipient	Subject	Attachment
MMS	√ ¹	√	√	√ ³
SMS	√ ²	√	—	—

1 Enter up to approx. 30,000 Half Pitch alphanumeric characters (approx. 10,000 Full Pitch characters).

2 Enter up to 140 bytes or 70 characters (Half/Full Pitch in total). If the entire message is entered in Half Pitch alphanumeric mode, enter up to 160 Half Pitch characters.

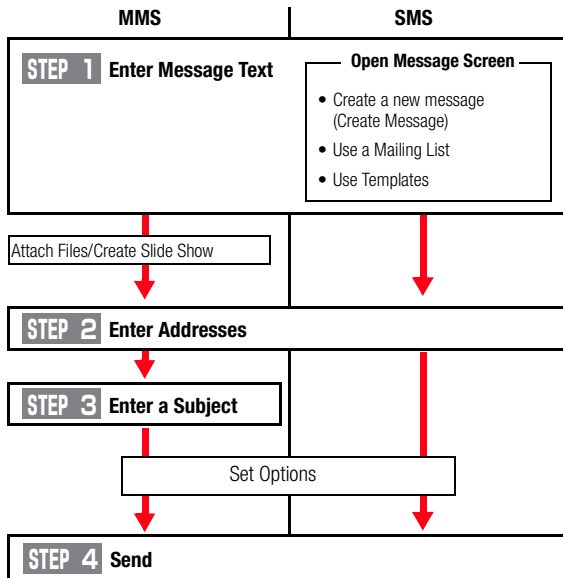
3 Up to 30 files (Up to 300 Kbytes including Message, Subject and Attachments).

■ Required

MMS takes a phone number or e-mail address and SMS takes a phone number as an address.

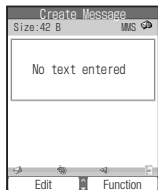
Enter up to 20 recipients for MMS and only 1 recipient for SMS.

Steps







STEP 1 Enter Message Text

- 1 Press   and select *Create Message*



Create Message (message editor)



To use Templates




- 1 Press   and select *Templates*
- 2 Highlight a template and press  

- 2 Press  

- 3 Enter message text

Tip

- **To access from the Main Menu**
Press  and select  *Messaging*



- **To use a Mailing List**
 - 1 Press  in standby and select *Mailing List*
 - 2 Highlight a Mailing List and press  

• Message Types

SMS or MMS can be set as the default message type. Each time you create a message, the new message opens in the set default message type. Set default message type from the Sending settings in Message Settings. Message Type can be changed while editing.

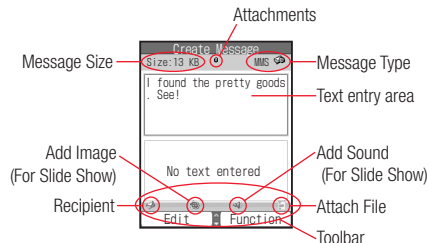
When text message exceeds the SMS limit or an e-mail address is entered as a recipient, the message type automatically changes to MMS. The message type changes to MMS even when using a template.

• After text is entered

A new text entry field with *No text entered* becomes active. Entering text in the new field enables the message to function as a slide show. To enter text, move the cursor to the new field and press  .

■ Create Message (message editor)

Attach files or create a slide show by selecting icons from the bottom of the screen.



Create Message (message editor)

STEP 2 Enter Addresses

Addresses cannot be entered until message text is entered, a file is attached or a slide is added.

1 Press  and scroll down until the cursor moves to the toolbar

2 Move the cursor to  and press  Recipient



Create Message (header fields)

To operate from the Function menu

Move the cursor to the message text and select *Recipient* from the Function menu

3 Move the cursor to *To:* field

To add a recipient (For MMS only)

- ① Select *Add Recipient* from the Function menu
- ② Select *To:*, *Cc:* or *Bcc:*

4 Enter an Address

To enter directly

① Press  Edit

② Enter a phone number or address

To retrieve from the Phone Book

① Select *Look-up Address* from the Function menu

② Search in the Phone Book and select a phone number or address

To retrieve from Messaging Log

① Select *Look-up Address* from the Function menu

② Select *Messaging Log*

③ Select a recipient

5 To add an address, repeat Steps 3 and 4



• Adding Addresses for MMS

Specify up to 16 recipients including Cc and Bcc addresses.

Recipients specified in the Cc or Bcc field receive a copy of the message. A copy of the message is sent to the recipients with the recipients' addresses in the To and Cc fields appearing in the message and without those in the Bcc field appearing in the message.

Entering more than one address for SMS changes the message type to MMS.

• To delete an address

Move the cursor to the address entry field and select *Delete* from the Function menu.



When more than one address has been entered, *Delete All* can be selected.

STEP 3 Enter a Subject

1 Move the cursor to the subject field and

press  

To change the message type from SMS to MMS to enter a subject

- ① Select **Add Subject** from the Function menu of Create Message (header fields)
- ② Move the cursor to the subject field and press  

2 Enter the subject

Tip

To delete the subject

Select **Remove Subject** from the Function menu of Create Message (header fields).

STEP 4 Send

Select **Send** from the Function menu of Create Message (header fields)

Tip

To change the message type

- ① Select **Message Type: MMS** or **Message Type: SMS**
- ② Select a message type

The message type cannot be changed from MMS to SMS if an entry item unavailable for SMS has been entered.

Attaching Files

Image, sound or video files can be attached to MMS, with the total message size not exceeding 300 Kbytes, including the message text, addresses, subject and attached files.

Attaching Files Saved in Data Folder

1 Press repeatedly on Create Message (message editor) to move the cursor to the toolbar

2 Move the cursor to and press

3 Select a folder and select a file

To add another attachment

Repeat Steps 1 to 3

Tip

To attach a file using the Function menu



- 1 Select **Insert Item** → **Attach File** from the Function menu of Create Message (message editor)
- 2 Select a folder and select a file

Note

Before sending an attachment, check which file formats the recipient can receive and which services the recipient uses.

Function Menu from the File List

Open Function menu to access the following functions from a file list (accessible only by selecting **Attach File**).

Function Menu	Description
Open	View or play the file. The Image Viewer opens for an image file. Press   to play a sound file.
Sort	Rearrange the list by name, date, file size or file type.
Details	Display the file type, file size, and the last updated date and time.


Function Menu from Create Message (message editor)

In Create Message (message editor), the following operations are available using the Function menu: Items that appear vary depending on the cursor position or editing state.

Function Menu	Description
Recipient	Open Create Message (header fields)
Custom Time*	Set the interval to display or play the next slide
Delete Slide*	Delete a slide
New Slide	Add a slide
Insert Item	Attach a file
Preview	Open the Message Preview Window
Attachments	Open a list of attachments
Save Draft	Save the created message in Drafts
Save Template	Save the created message in Templates

* Menu items marked with an asterisk appear when editing a slide show.

Attachment List



 appears in Create Message (message editor) when a file is attached. Open Attachments to view attached files. From the list, view or play a file or delete an attachment.

1 Press  repeatedly on Create Message (message editor) to move the cursor to the toolbar

2 Move the cursor to  and select *Attachments* from the Function menu

3 Select an option

To play or view an image, sound or video file

Highlight a file and press  

To delete one attachment at a time

Highlight a file and select *Delete* from the Function menu

To delete all attachments

① Select *Delete All* from the Function menu

② Press  

Tip

Operations from the Image Viewer

A selected image opens in the Image Viewer.

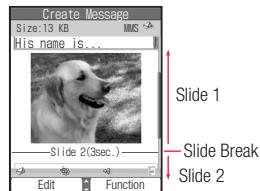
Operations from the Image Viewer under Create Message (message editor) are different from operations from Mailbox:

- Attachments cannot be saved.
- Creating a slide show deletes all components of the message being edited except open images.

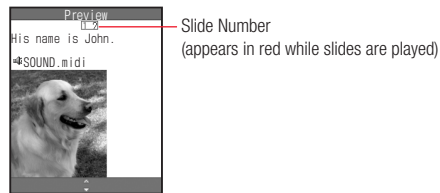
For operations from the Image Viewer, see "Mailbox".

Creating Slide Show

In Create Message (message editor), the first slide appears at the top. To view the slide show, open the Preview Window Screen.



Create Message (message editor)



Preview Screen




■ Editing Slides

Add a new slide to a message or add a slide before or after the currently being edited slide. After adding a slide, it can be edited.




1 Press  repeatedly on Create Message (message editor) to move the cursor to the toolbar

2 Add items to a slide




To add an image

- 1 Move the cursor to  and press  
- 2 Select a folder and select a file

To add a sound

- 1 Move the cursor to  and press  
- 2 Select a folder and select a file

To add message text

- 1 Move the cursor to  and select **New Slide** from the Function menu
- 2 Select a position to add
- 3 Press   and enter message text



Tip

- **Adding another item to current slide**

Add one image file, sound file, and text file each, per slide. When a second image/sound is added, a new slide is created automatically.

- **Alternative steps to add items to slides**


To add an image or sound

- 1 Move the cursor to the slide break, the message text field in the slide, image or sound
 - 2 Select **Insert Item** from the Function menu to add an image or sound
- To add message text**

- 1 Move the cursor to the slide break, the image or sound in the slide
- 2 Select **New Slide** from the Function menu

- **File attachment to slide show**

Perform the following to attach a file to slide show:

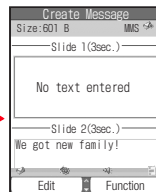
- Move the cursor to  and press  
- Select **Insert Item** → **Attach File** from the Function menu

■ Inserting a New Slide

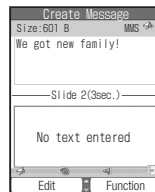
Insert a new slide before or after the current slide.



Current slide



Slide is inserted before the current slide



Slide is inserted after the current slide

Note

Check whether the recipient's device is slide show compatible. If the recipient's device is not slide show compatible, the slide show does not appear as slides. Images and sounds are treated as regular attachments.

Function menu for Images or Sounds in Slides

The following operations are available using the Function menu when the cursor is on an image or sound in a slide:

Function Menu	Description
Replace Image/Replace Sound	Replace the image or sound with another one
Remove Image/Remove Sound	Remove an image or sound
Play	Play sound

Setting Slide Intervals

Set the time for an interval between slides. Specify the interval from 1 to 60 seconds.

Default Setting 3 seconds


1 Move the cursor to a slide break in Create Message (message editor) and select *Customise Time* from the Function menu

2 Customise the setting

To select preset time

Select *3 seconds*, *5 seconds* or *10 seconds*

To enter time

- 1 Select *Customise Time*
- 2 Press  and enter time in seconds
- 3 Select *Save* from the Function menu

Deleting a Slide

Deleting a slide deletes the message text, image and sound of the slide.

Move the cursor to a slide break in Create Message (message editor) and select *Delete Slide* from the Function menu

Setting Sending Options

The following options are available for outgoing messages: These options are valid only for the current outgoing message.

Sending Option	Description
Delivery Report	Set Delivery Report to YES to confirm delivery status of sent messages.
Message Expiry	Set the period for the message to be stored on the mail server. After the set time elapses, the message is deleted from the mail server.

Sending Option	Description
Delivery Time	Set the time when the message is delivered. After sending a message, the message is stored on the mail server until the specified time comes.
Message Priority	Indicate importance of outgoing messages in three levels.

1 Move the cursor to *Settings* in the Address Entry

Window and press 

2 Select and configure items

To set a delivery report

- ① Select *Delivery Report*
- ② Select an option

To set an expiration period

- ① Select *Message Expiry*
- ② Select an option

To specify Delivery Time

- ① Select *Delivery Time*
- ② Select an option

To set the Message Priority

- ① Select *Message Priority*
- ② Select an option

Tip

To change default settings of Sending Settings

For default settings, see "Other Message Settings".

Note

Messages stored on the server beyond the maximum time of 72 hours will be deleted even if a longer Message Expiry time is set.

Saving Created Messages

■ Saving in Drafts

Temporarily save messages in Drafts to edit and send at a later time.

Select *Save Draft* from the Function menu of Create Message (message editor/header fields)

Alternatively, press  on Create Message (message editor/header fields) and 

Tip

Operations on messages saved in Drafts

Drafts is one of the mailboxes. For operations on mailboxes, see "Mailbox".

■ Editing Messages Saved in Drafts

Perform the following steps to open a message saved in Drafts:

① Press and select **Drafts**

② Highlight a message and press

When using menus, press in Step 1 and select **Messaging** → **Drafts**

■ Saving in Templates

Save a message in Templates to create other messages with the same message text easily.

1 **Select *Save Template* from the Function menu of Create Message (message editor/header fields)**

2 **Press and enter a Template name**

3 **Select *Save* from the Function menu**

◀ Tip ▶

- **To save messages from Sent Messages, Received Messages or the User Folder into Templates**

① Press and select **Sent Messages** or **Received Messages**

To save a message in the User Folder:

Press and select **User Folders** then select a folder

② Select a message

③ Select **Save** → **Save Template** from the Function menu

④ Press and enter a Template name

⑤ Select **Save** from the Function menu

When using menus, press in Step 1 and select **Messaging** → **Sent Messages, Received Messages** or **User Folders**

- **Operations on messages saved in Templates**

Templates is one of the mailboxes. For operations on mailboxes, see "Mailbox".

- **To edit Templates**

Templates cannot be directly edited. To edit Template text, edit a message created from the Template and save as a Template again.

Mailbox

Viewing Messages

Mailbox is a collective term of *Received Messages*, *Sent Messages*, *Unsent Messages*, *User Folders*, *Drafts* and *Templates* folders.

Each folder in the Mailbox contains the following messages:

Folder		Messages
Received Messages		Received messages are saved here
Sent Messages		Sent messages are saved here
Unsent Messages		Messages are saved here after delivery failure or cancellation
User Folders*	User Folder 01 to 10	Use to organise incoming messages
Drafts		Draft messages are saved here
Templates		Saves pre-written text to add to messages

* User Folders 01 to 10 can be renamed.

Viewing Messages from a Message List

1 Press  

When using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging*



2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a message in the list and press  

When selecting *Unsent Messages* or *Drafts* in Step 2

Highlight a message and select **View** from the Function menu

When selecting *Templates* in Step 2

Highlight a message and press  


Tip

Viewing text from templates

Template messages cannot be previewed. Create Message (message editor) appears.

Message List



Received Messages	
 090392XXXX1	le went... 02/01 20:13
 hi rose@abcde...	
 This is... 02/01 21:29	
 Nakayama Taro	
 How are... 02/01 22:34	
 090392XXXX5	
 I found... 02/02 08:56	
 Shouji Mika	
 I found... 02/03 15:34	
View	Function

-Sender or Recipient

-Subject for MMS






Beginning of message text for SMS







Received date and time

Message Indicators

Example: Received Messages

Message Indicators

-  Unread Message without attachment
-  Unread Message with attachment
-  Read Message without attachment
-  Read Message with attachment
-  Locked message

-  Messages not yet retrieved and stored on the mail server
-  Message Priority "High"
-  Messages with Delivery Report set
-  MMS
-  SMS
-  SMS saved on the USIM Card

■ Marking Unread or Read

Mark received messages as unread or read.



1 Select a message from a message list in Received

Messages

To mark one message at a time

Highlight a message

To mark more than one message

- ① Select **Mark Items** from the Function menu
- ② Highlight a message and press  
- ③ Repeat ② to mark other messages

2 Select **Mark as Read** or **Mark as Unread** from the Function menu

◀ Tip ▶

- **To deselect messages**

Highlight a message and press  . To select or deselect all messages, select **Mark All** or **Deselect All** from the Function menu.

- **To view details such as a timestamp or sender**

Highlight a message in a message list and select **Message Details** from the Function menu.

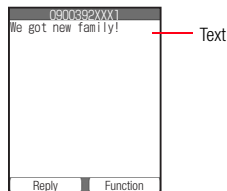
■ Delivery Report

Set Delivery Report to YES to receive delivery status notification.

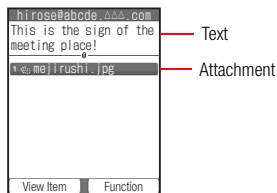
■ Operations from the Message Window

21

■ Message Window



SMS or MMS without attachment



MMS with attachment

Tip

- **To open Create Message (message editor) easily**

Select **Save** → **Add Desktop Icon** from the Function menu of the Message Window.

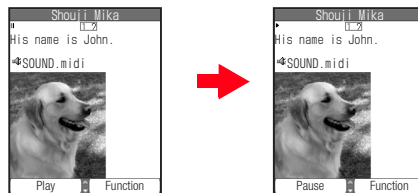
- **To mute a sound file**

Select **Mute** from the Function menu. When Manner Mode is set, a confirmation to play the sound appears.

Slide Show

Slide Show has slide numbers at the top of the Message Window.

Press **Play** to display slides in order. Press **Pause** to stop playback.



Paused

Playing

When a valid sound is attached, the sound is played automatically. Use **Sounds** of Message Settings to set whether to play a sound automatically.

Saving to a Phone Book

Save a phone number or e-mail address of a sender or recipient to the Phone Book.

1 Select **Save** → **Save Address** from the Function menu of the Message Window

2 Save to a contact





■ Copy

Copy a text string from a message in Received Messages or the User Folder and paste it when entering text.

1 Select *Copy* from the Function menu of a Message Window of a message in Received Messages or the User Folder

2 Select an option and copy

To copy from the message text

- ① Select *Textcopy*
- ② Move the cursor to the first character of the copy range and press  
- ③ Move the cursor to the last character and press  

To copy a phone number or e-mail address of a sender

Select *From*

To copy a phone number or e-mail address of a recipient

Select *To*

To copy from the subject

Select *Subject*

■ Function Menus from the Message Window

In the Message Window, the following operations are available using the Function menu: Items that appear vary depending on the message.

Function Menu	Description
Mute/Cancel Mute	Mute the sound or cancel mute
Reply	Reply to a received message
Select Reply	Reply to the received message with or without quoting the message
Delete	Delete a message
Lock/Unlock	Protect or unprotect the message
Forward	Forward the message to another recipient
Save	Add a message to Stand-by Display as a Desktop Icon, save attachments, save Templates or save the phone number or e-mail address of the sender or recipient to a Phone Book contact
Call Contact	Make a voice or video call to the sender or recipient
Copy	Copy a text string of the message text, sender, recipient or subject
Message Details	View the timestamp, sender, recipient, message size or priority
View Item*	Opens the sound, image or movie file in the viewer
Details*	View the file type, file size, and the last updated date and time of the attachment

* The items marked with an asterisk appear only when the attachment is selected by the cursor.

Managing Folders

Categorize and save received messages using ten User Folders.

■ Renaming Folders

User Folders are named from “User Folder 01” to “User Folder 10” by default. Change these names if necessary.

- 1 Press   and select *User Folders*

When using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging* → *User Folders*

- 2 Highlight a User Folder and select *Rename Folder* from the Function menu

- 3 Enter a name using the keypad

- 4 Press  

■ Moving Messages to Other Folders

Only received messages can be moved.

- 1 Press  

When using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging*

- 2 Select a folder

To move a message from **Received Messages**

Select *Received Messages*

To move a message from a **User Folder**

Select *User Folders* and select a folder

- 3 Highlight a message and select *Move to Folder* from the Function menu

- 4 Select a destination folder



Messages saved in a User Folder cannot be moved to Received Messages.

Replying to Messages

A reply is created by Reply option as follows:

Item	Description
Message Text	The original message is not quoted. If using <i>Reply with History</i> , the original message is quoted.
Recipient	The sender of the received message is entered automatically.
Subject (MMS only)	The original subject preceded by “Re:” is copied to the field when the original subject is not blank.
Attachments	To be attached when replying with quote.

1 Press  

When using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging*

2 Select a folder

To reply to a message in Received Messages

Select *Received Messages*

To reply to a message in the User Folder

Select *User Folders* and select a folder

3 Highlight a message and select a reply method

To reply only to the sender without quoting the original message

Select *Select Reply* → *Reply* from the Function menu

To reply only to the sender with the original message quoted

Select *Select Reply* → *Reply with History* from the Function menu

To reply the sender and all recipients without quoting the original message

Select *Select Reply* → *Reply All* from the Function menu

To reply to the sender and all other recipients with the original message quoted

Select *Select Reply* → *Reply All with History* from the Function menu

4 Create and send a message

 Tip 

The message type of a reply

The message type is the same message type as the original message. The message type can be changed during editing.

Forwarding Messages

Messages in Received Messages, Sent Messages or Drafts can be forwarded to another address. The message created by using Forward includes the following:

Item	Description
Message Text	The original message text is quoted
Recipient	No recipient is entered
Subject (MMS only)	The original subject preceded by "Fw:" is copied to the field when the original subject is not blank
Attachments (MMS only)	All attachments to the original message are included except the ones that cannot be forwarded

1 Press  

When using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging*

2 Select a folder

To forward a message in Received Messages

Select *Received Messages*

To forward a message in Sent Messages

Select *Sent Messages*

To forward a message in a User Folder

Select *User Folders* and select a folder

To forward a message in Drafts

Select *Drafts*

3 Highlight a message and select *Forward* from the Function menu

4 Create and send a message

Tip

Message type of the forwarded message

Default Message Type is applied to the message to be forwarded. The message type is set to SMS if an entry item unavailable for SMS has been entered.

Sending Messages from Unsent Messages

■ Sending One Message at a Time

Resend a failed or cancelled message one at a time.

1 Press and select *Unsent Messages*

When using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging* → *Unsent Messages*

2 Highlight a message and select *Resend* from the Function menu

Tip

- **To edit an unsent message before resending it**
Highlight a message in a message list and select *Edit* from the Function menu.
- **To move an unsent message to Drafts**
Highlight a message in a message list and select *Move to Drafts* from the Function menu.

■ Send All Unsent Messages at Once


Send messages saved in Unsent Messages all at once.

1 Press and select *Unsent Messages*

2 Select *Resend All* from the Function menu

Locking Messages

Protect messages from being deleted. However, performing Memory Reset or All Reset deletes all messages including SMS saved on the USIM Card.

 appears next to locked messages in a message list.

1 Press  

When using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging*

2 **Select a folder**

To protect a message in Received Messages

Select *Received Messages*

To protect a message in Sent Messages

Select *Sent Messages*

To protect a message in a User Folder

Select *User Folders* and select a folder

To protect a message in Drafts

Select *Drafts*

To protect Templates

Select *Templates*



3 **Select a message**

To protect one at a time

Highlight a message

To protect more than one message

① Select *Mark Items* from the Function menu

② Highlight a message and press  

③ Repeat ② to mark other messages

To protect all messages in a folder

Select *Mark All* from the Function menu

4 **Select *Lock* from the Function menu**

 **Tip** 

• **To unprotect messages**

Select *Unlock* from the Function menu in Step 4.

• **To deselect messages**

Highlight a message and press  . To select or deselect all messages, select *Mark All* or *Deselect All* from the Function menu.

 **Note** 

Messages in Unsent Messages cannot be protected.

Deleting Messages

■ Specifying and Deleting Messages

1 Press  

When using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging*

2 Select a Mailbox**To delete a message in Received Messages**

Select *Received Messages*

To delete a message in Sent Messages

Select *Sent Messages*

To delete a message in a User Folder

Select *User Folders* and select a folder

To delete a message in Drafts

Select *Drafts*





To delete Templates

Select *Templates*



3 Delete a message**To delete one at a time**

- ① Highlight a message
- ② Select *Delete* from the Function menu
- ③ Press  



To delete more than one message

- ① Select *Mark Items* from the Function menu
- ② Highlight a message and press  
- ③ Repeat ② to mark other messages
- ④ Select *Delete* from the Function menu
- ⑤ Press  

Tip**To delete a message in Unsent Messages**

Highlight a message in the message list and press  . Messages in Unsent Messages can only be deleted one at a time.

To deselect messages

Highlight a message and press  .

Deleting All Messages in a Folder

Delete all messages in a folder at once.

1 Press  **When using menus**

Press  and select  *Messaging*

2 Select a folder**To delete messages in Received Messages**

Select *Received Messages*

To delete messages in Sent Messages

Select *Sent Messages*

To delete messages in a User Folder

Select *User Folders* and select a folder

To delete messages in Drafts

Select *Drafts*

To delete Templates

Select *Templates*

3 Select *Delete All* from the Function menu

4 Press

Tip


When some messages are protected

Protected messages will not be deleted.

Using a Phone Number, e-mail Address or URL in a Message

If a phone number, e-mail address or URL in a text message appears in blue, select the information for direct access. The information can also be saved to Phone Book.


■ Saving to the Phone Book

- 1 Move the cursor to a phone number or e-mail address on the Message Window and press
- 2 Select *Save Address*
- 3 Save to the Phone Book
( "Phone Book")


■ Making a Call/Send a Message/Access the Internet

Use a phone number, e-mail address or URL from the Message Window

To make a voice or video call

- ① Select the phone number and select *Call*
- ② Select the type of call and dial ( "Basic Handset Operations" and "Video Call")

To send a message

- ① Select a phone number or e-mail address then
Create Message
- ② Create a message and send ( "Sending Messages")

To access the Internet

Select a URL ( "Basic Web Operations")

Tip

URL of Streaming Playback

A text string of Half Pitch alphanumeric characters and "." or "/" starting with "rtsp://" indicates streaming playback of a video.

Using Attachments

Opening Attachments

View or play an image or sound file attached to a received MMS.

Move the cursor to an attachment in the Message

Window and press  

For slide show

Move the cursor to an attachment in the Message Window and select **View Item** from the Function menu.

Tip



- **To view details of an attachment**

Move the cursor to an attachment in the Message Window and select **Details** from the Function menu.

- **For a file requiring a content key**

A confirmation of acquisition of a content key appears. Obtain a content key.

Image Viewer

Selecting **View Item** for an image opens the Image Viewer. In the Image Viewer, press   to zoom in the image. To restore the original display size, select **Zoom out** from the Function menu.

In the Image Viewer, the following operations are available using the Function menu:

Function Menu	Description
Save	Save the currently open image file to the Data Folder
Details	View details of the currently open image file
Create New Message	Create slide show using the currently open image file

Saving to the Data Folder

1 **Move the cursor to an attachment in the Message Window and select *Save* → *Save item* from the Function menu**

2 **Press**  

3 **Check the file name and press**  

To change the file name

① Enter a name using the keypad

② Press  



Tip

To rearrange the file list

Press in the file list and select a sorting condition.

Operations from the Message List

Rearranging Messages in Received Messages or the User Folder

Rearrange messages in Received Messages or the User Folder by timestamp, sender, read/unread status or message type.

1 Press

When using menus

Press and select *Messaging*

2 Select a folder

To rearrange messages in Received Messages

Select *Received Messages*

To rearrange messages in the User Folder

Select *User Folders* and select a folder

3 Select *Sort* from the Function menu

4 Select a sorting condition

To sort by received date and time

Select *Chronological*

To sort by sender

Select *By Sender*

To sort by read/unread status

Select *By Read Status*

To sort by MMS/SMS

Select *By Message Type*

Moving Received SMS to the USIM Card

Move received SMS to the USIM Card. appears next to an SMS on the USIM Card.

1 Press and select *Received Messages*

When using menus

Press and select *Messaging* →
Received Messages

2 Highlight an SMS and select *Move to USIM* from the Function menu

To move an SMS back to the handset

Highlight an SMS with and select *USIM Unsync* from the Function menu

Note

SMS in the User Folder cannot be moved to the USIM Card.

Function Menus from the Message List

In the message list, the following operations are available using the Function menu: Items that appear vary depending on a Mailbox.

Function Menu	Description
Receive	Receive the rest of MMS
Send	Send a message
Resend	Resend a message
Resend All	Resend all messages at once
Select Reply	Reply to the received message with or without quoting the message
Forward	Forward the message to another recipient
Edit	Open Create Message (message editor) for editing
View	Open the message preview
Delete	Delete a message
Delete All	Deleting all messages in the folder
Move to Folder	Move messages to another folder
Move to Drafts	Move unsent messages to Drafts
Lock/Unlock	Protect or unprotect the message
Mark as Read/Unread	Mark a received message as read or unread
Sort	Rearrange the received message list by timestamp, sender, or message type


Function Menu	Description
Move to USIM/USIM Unsync	Move a received SMS to the USIM Card or move back to Received Messages
Message Details	View the timestamp, sender, recipient, message size or priority
Mark Items	Select more than one target message for an operation
Call Contact	Make a voice or video call to the sender or recipient
Back	Return to the previous screen

Mail Server

Using the Mail List

An MMS notification or the first portion of the MMS is delivered to notify you of a new MMS stored on the Service Centre server when:

- Auto Receiving is set to *Always defer*
- Auto Receiving is set to *Defer if over 1KB*, *Defer if over 10KB*, or *Defer if over 50KB*, and the size of the message exceeds the set value
- There is no free memory space on the handset
- A video call is in progress
- Packet communication is in progress with an external device connected

When MMS is stored at the Service Centre,  appears at the top of the display until complete message is downloaded. Acquire the list of MMS stored on the mail server to retrieve, delete or forward the stored messages.

For the period for MMS to remain stored on the mail server, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

■ Acquire the Mail List



1 Press   and select *Server Mail Box*

When using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging* → *Server Mail Box*

2 Select *Acquire Mail List* from *Server Mail Box*

Tip

- **To open an already acquired Mail List**
Select *Server Mail List* from *Server Mail Box* to open the list without re-acquiring the list.
- **To check the status of the Mail Server**
Select *Server Mail Volume* from *Server Mail Box*. To update to the latest status, press  .

■ Receiving MMS from the Mail List

1 Open the Mail List

2 Highlight MMS and press  


Tip

To receive all MMS on the Mail List

- ① Acquire the Mail List
- ② Select *Retrieve All Mails* from *Server Mail Box*

■ Deleting MMS on the Mail Server Using the Mail List

Deleted MMS will not be received.

- 1 Open the Mail List
- 2 Highlight MMS and select *Delete* from the Function menu
- 3 Press 

Tip

To delete all MMS on the Mail List

- ① Acquire the Mail List
- ② Select *Delete All Mails* from *Server Mail Box*
- ③ Press 

Forwarding Messages on the Mail Server

- 1 Open the Mail List
- 2 Highlight MMS and select *Forward* from the Function menu
- 3 Enter a recipient and send

Tip

A forwarded message contains the following:

Item	Description
Message Text	The original MMS message text is quoted
To:	No recipient is entered
Subject:	The original MMS subject preceded with "Fw:" is entered automatically
Attachment	All attachments of the original MMS are included except the ones that cannot be forwarded

Only the *To* field can be edited.

Other Message Settings

Mailing List

Save phone numbers or e-mail addresses in a Mailing List to frequently send the same message to a group of recipients. Save up to 20 Mailing Lists. Each Mailing List can contain up to 5 phone numbers or e-mail addresses.

■ Saving to a Mailing List

1 Press  and select  *Phone Book* → *Mailing List*



2 Select a Mailing List

To change the name

Highlight a Mailing List, select *Edit List Name* from the Function menu and enter a name

3 Enter a phone number or e-mail address

To enter directly

- 1 Highlight an entry number and press  
- 2 Enter a phone number or e-mail address

To retrieve from the Phone Book

- 1 Highlight an entry number and select *Look-up Address* → *Phone Book* from the Function menu
- 2 Search in the Phone Book and select a phone number or e-mail address

To retrieve from Sent Address

- 1 Highlight an entry number and select *Look-up Address* → *Sent Address* from the Function menu
- 2 Select a phone number or e-mail address

To retrieve from Received Address

- 1 Highlight an entry number and select *Look-up Address* → *Received Address* from the Function menu
- 2 Select a phone number or e-mail address

To retrieve from Redial

- 1 Highlight an entry number and select *Look-up Address* → *Redial* from the Function menu
- 2 Select a phone number



To retrieve from Received Calls

- 1 Highlight an entry number and select *Look-up Address* → *Received Calls* from the Function menu
- 2 Select a phone number

4 Repeat Step 3 to add phone numbers or e-mail addresses

■ Deleting Mailing List Entries

Delete phone numbers or e-mail addresses saved in a Mailing List.

- 1 Press  and select  *Phone Book* → *Mailing List*
- 2 Select a Mailing List
- 3 Highlight an entry number and select *Delete One* or *Delete All* from the Function menu
- 4 Choose *YES*

☺ Tip ☹

To initialise a Mailing List name

- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Highlight a Mailing List and select *Reset List Name* from the Function menu
- ③ Choose *YES*



Sending Settings

■ Setting Message Expiration

Set the period for the message to be stored on the mail server.



After the set time elapses, the message is deleted from the mail server.

Default Setting Never delete

- 1 Press   and select *Settings* → *Sending* → *Message Expiry*
- 2 Select an option

☺ Tip ☹

To access Sending settings using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging* → *Settings* → *Sending*

■ Specifying a Delivery Time

Set the time when the message is to be delivered. After sending the message, the message is stored on the mail server until the specified time arrives.

Default Setting Immediate



- 1 Press   and select *Settings* → *Sending* → *Delivery Time*

2 Select an option

■ Setting the Default Message Type

Select MMS or SMS for a standard message type when creating a new message.

Default Setting MMS

1 Press   and select *Settings* → *Sending* → *Default Message Type*

2 Select *Move Up* or *Move Down* from the Function menu and place the default type at the top

3 Press  

Receiving Settings

■ MMS Download Setting (Auto Receiving)

Set a downloading option for MMS. Select an option from below:

Auto Receiving Option	Description
Immediately	Download all MMS automatically
Always defer	Download all MMS manually
Defer if over 1KB	Download MMS manually depending on its size
Defer if over 10KB	
Defer if over 50KB	

Default Setting Always defer

1 Press   and select *Settings* → *Receiving* → *Auto Receiving*

2 Select an option

 Tip 



To access Receiving settings using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging* → *Settings* → *Receiving*

■ Rejecting Anonymous Messages

Reject messages without a sender's name.

Default Setting NO

1 Press   and select *Settings* → *Receiving* → *Reject Anonymous*


2 Select an option

Delivery Report

■ Delivery Report for Sent Messages

Set Delivery Report to YES to receive delivery status notification of outgoing messages.

Default Setting NO

1 Press   and select *Settings* → *Receipts* → *Delivery Report*

2 Select an option

 Tip 



To access **Delivery Report** using menus

Press  and select  *Messaging* → *Settings* → *Receipts*

■ Delivery Acknowledgement for Received Messages

Set to send an acknowledgement to the sender when receiving a message.

Default Setting Always

1 Press   and select *Settings* → *Receipts* → *Acknowledge Delivery Report*

2 Select an option

 Tip 

When Acknowledge Delivery Report is set to *Ask first*

A confirmation whether to send a Delivery Report to the sender appears when opening a message for the first time.

Personalization

■ Setting Signature

Set a signature to add your name or e-mail address at the end of outgoing messages automatically.

Default Setting Enable/Disable Signature: Never

1 Press   and select *Settings* → *Personalization*

2 Select and configure items

To edit the Signature

- 1 Select **Edit Signature**
- 2 Press   and enter a signature
- 3 Select **Save** from the Function menu



To set whether to add the signature

- 1 Select **Enable/Disable Signature**
- 2 Select an option



Tip

To access Personalization using menus

Press  and select  **Messaging** → **Settings** → **Personalization**

■ Setting Opening Phrase (Salutation)



Set an Opening Phrase to add greetings at the top of outgoing messages automatically.

Default Setting Enable/Disable Opening Phrase: Never

- 1 Press   and select **Settings** → **Personalization**

2 Select and configure items

To edit the Opening Phrase

- 1 Select **Edit Opening Phrase**
- 2 Press   and enter an opening phrase
- 3 Select **Save** from the Function menu

To set whether to add the opening phrase

- 1 Select **Enable/Disable Opening Phrase**
- 2 Select an option

Message Settings

■ Setting Play Preference for Slides

Set whether to automatically play sounds attached or inserted to a slide show when opening a message.

Default Setting Ask first



- 1 Press   and select **Settings** → **Message Settings** → **Sounds**

2 Select an option



Tip

• To access Message Settings using menus

Press  and select  **Messaging** → **Settings** → **Message Settings**

- **When Sounds is set to Ask First**

A confirmation whether to play sounds appears when opening a Message Window of a slide show with sounds inserted or attached.

■ Setting Font Size

Select the font size in the Message Window from *Small*, *Medium* or *Large*.

Default Setting Medium

- 1 Press and select *Settings* → *Message Settings* → *Font Size*
- 2 Select an option



Tip

Font size on Web pages

The Font Size is common to both messages and Web pages. Changing the font size for Web pages or messages changes the font size for both.

■ Changing the SMS Centre Number

The SMS Centre number can be changed. Do not change the SMS Centre number unless advised to do so by Vodafone. If the wrong SMS Centre number is set by mistake, SMS can no longer be sent. The SMS Centre number is saved on the USIM Card. No option is available to restore the default setting.

Default Setting +819066519300

- 1 Press and select *Settings* → *Message Settings* → *SMS Message Centre*
- 2 Press and enter the SMS Centre number
- 3 Select *Save* from the Function menu

■ Setting MMS Creation Mode

Set whether MMS incompatible files can be attached.

The following behaviours can be set:

MMS Creation Mode	Attachments
No	Files cannot be attached
Yes, but warn	A confirmation appears whether to attach a file not compatible with MMS
Yes, no warning	Any files including MMS incompatible files can be attached

Default Setting Yes, no warning

- 1 Press and select *Settings* → *Message Settings* → *MMS Creation Mode*
- 2 Select an option



Tip

MMS Compatible Files include

JPEG, GIF, WBMP, MIDI, vCard and vCalendar files



Note

Performing Memory Reset also deletes all protected messages.

Restoring All Message Settings to Their Defaults

Restore Message Settings to their defaults (☞ “Settings to be Reset” in “Appendix”).

1 Press and select *Settings* → *Message Settings* → *Reset settings*

2 Press



Note

The SMS Centre number will not be reset even if performing Reset settings.

Deleting All Saved Messages

Delete all messages saved in Mailbox and all names of User Folders (☞ “Settings to be Reset” in “Appendix”).

1 Press and select *Settings* → *Message Settings* → *Memory Reset*

2 Press

Basic Web Operations

Before Using the Web

■ SSL

The Secure Socket Layer (SSL) uses encoding technology to exchange data on the Internet for higher security, and is usually used to exchange important data such as credit card numbers or personal information.

The 802N handset incorporates electronic certificates (Root Certificates) issued by certification authorities by default. The contents of certificates can be viewed.

.....

■ Using SSL

You are solely responsible for the use of SSL on a secured site for your intended application and use.

Subject to the terms of any agreement between you and Vodafone, the licensors VeriSign, Baltimore Technologies Japan and Entrust Japan shall not be liable for any direct, indirect, special consequential, incidental, or punitive damages of any kind whatsoever with respect to the use of SSL.

.....

■ Cache (Temporary Memory)

Information obtained via the Web is saved in a temporary memory (cache). The information saved in the cache will not be deleted when leaving the Web or turning the handset off, however, the oldest information is overwritten automatically after the pre-defined space becomes full. When information expires, it is deleted from the cache automatically.

To empty the cache manually, perform **Clear Cache**.

If a previously viewed Web page is opened, the copy of the page saved in the cache may be opened instead of the Web page through the Service Centre.



Accessing the Web

■ Accessing from Menus




Select an item from the Vodafone live! menu to access a site.

- 1 Press  in standby
- 2 Select an item

Tip

- To access the Vodafone live! menu from the Main Menu
Press  and select  **Vodafone live!** → **Vodafone live!**

• Accessing a protected Web Page

A confirmation appears when attempting to access a Web page protected with SSL. To proceed, press  .  appears on a Web page protected with SSL.



■ Entering a URL

Enter a URL directly to access a Web page.

1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* →

Enter URL

2 Press  

To change the preceding text string (*http://* and *https://*) of the URL

Select *http://* or *https://* from the Function menu and

press  

3 Enter a URL

4 Select *OK* from the Function menu

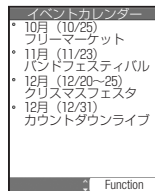
Tip






To access another site by entering its URL from a Web page


Select *Enter URL* from the Function menu.

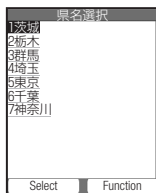
Navigating a Web Page


Use the following keys to navigate a Web page:



-  Move the cursor or scroll the screen
-  Move the cursor to the item below
-  Move the cursor to the item above
- Side Keys  and  Scroll the screen



-  Stop melody playback (if a melody is played automatically)



-  Select the item at the cursor

Tip

To create a desktop shortcut to a frequently accessed Web page

- 1 Select **Add Desktop** from the Function menu of a Web page
- 2 Press  

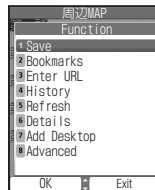
Function Menu from a Web Page




The following operations are available using the Function menu of a Web page:

Function Menu	Description
Save	Save the information in My Saved Page or the URL in Bookmarks
Bookmarks	Displays a list of Bookmarks giving you a quick access to the site
My Saved Page	Displays saved pages off-line
Enter URL	Enter URL to access sites
History	Access the Web from the access history
Forward	Proceed to the next screen (When there is a next page)

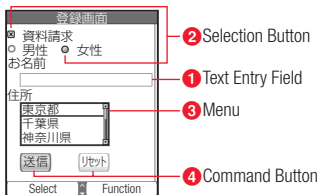
Function Menu	Description
Refresh	Update the current Web page for the latest content
Details	View the URL of the current Web page or detailed information about the page
Add Desktop	Create a desktop shortcut to the URL and title of the current Web page
Advanced	Open a file list, copy a text string, search for a text string in a Web page, send a message to a URL in the current Web page or access Web settings

From the Function menu of a Web page, use one of the following two ways to select an item:




- Use  to highlight an item and press  
- Press a key corresponding a number at the left of an item


■ Text Entry/Item Selection




1 Text Entry Field

Move the cursor to and press  to enter text.

2 Selection Button


Move the cursor to (check box) and press  to check the box .

Move the cursor to (radio button) and press  to select the button .

3 Menu

Move the cursor to a menu and press  to select an item.

4 Command Button

Move the cursor to and press  to execute the command assigned to the button.

Tip

Web Memo

Up to 20 of the latest text strings entered in text entry fields are saved in Web Memo automatically and can be quoted for text entry later. Up to 16 Full Pitch or 32 Half Pitch characters can be saved per memo.

■ Authentication

Some Web pages require authentication. If authentication is requested, select a text entry field and enter the User ID or password.



■ Uploading Files

Perform the following steps to upload a file saved on the handset:

- 1 Select an execution button such as one labelled “参照 (Browse)” on a Web page
- 2 Select a file in the Data Folder
- 3 Select an execution button labelled such as “Send”

■ Using a Phone Number, e-mail Address or URL on the Web Page

Use a phone number, e-mail address or URL contained in a Web page to make a phone call, create MMS or access the Web.

A usable phone number, e-mail address or URL is underlined.

- 1 **Open a Web page**
- 2 **Select a phone number, e-mail address or URL and make a call, create a message or access the Web**

To make a voice/video call

- ① Select a phone number
- ② Select the type of call and dial (☞ “Basic Handset Operations” and “Video Call”)

To add to the Phone Book

- ① Select a phone number
- ② Select **Create Contact** (☞ “Phone Book”)

To create MMS

- ① Select an e-mail address
- ② Create and send MMS (☞ “Sending Messages”)

To access the Web

- Select a URL (☞ “Basic Web Operations”)

Note







A video call can be made only when accessing the Web page from My Saved Page. Video calls cannot be made while connected.

Using Information

Using Image Files

■ Saving to the Data Folder

Save an image on the current Web page to the Data Folder. Saved image files can be set as Stand-by Display.

- 1 **Open a Web page**
- 2 **Select *Advanced* from the Function menu and select *File List***
- 3 **Highlight an image file and press**  
- 4 **Press**  
- 5 **Check the file name and press**  

To change the file name and save the file

- ① Enter a name using the keypad
- ② Press  

☰ Tip



Viewing an Image Using the Media Player

Depending on the image file type, the Media Player automatically displays the image. For operations of Media Player, see "Media Player".

Using Melody Files

Play or save a sound file (melody) contained in the currently open Web page to the Data Folder. Saved melodies can be used as ringtones.

■ Playing a Melody

- 1 **Open a Web page**
- 2 **Select *Advanced* from the Function menu and select *File List***
- 3 **Highlight a sound file and select *View* from the Function menu**
- 4 **Press**  



☰ Tip

- **To stop the playback**

Press  

- **Playback volume**

A melody is played at the volume set for Ring Volume for **Phone/Video Call**.

When the Manner Mode is set, a confirmation appears. Press   to play the melody. The melody volume cannot be adjusted during playback from the Web.

- **Playing a Melody with the Media Player**

Depending on the melody file type, the Media Player automatically plays the melody file. For operations of Media Player, see "Media Player".

■ Saving to the Data Folder

1 Open a Web page

2 Select *Advanced* from the Function menu and select *File List*

3 Highlight a sound file and press

4 Press

5 Check the file name and press

To change the file name and save the file

① Enter a name using the keypad

② Press  

Using Files

The names of files contained on a Web page can be seen on a File List and saved in the Data Folder.

However, files containing content keys do not appear in the File List.

1 Open a Web page

2 Save a file

To save a file containing a content key

① Select a file

② Press  



To save other files

① Select *Advanced* from the Function menu and select

File List

② Highlight a file and press  

③ Press  

④ Check the file name and press  

■ Function Menu of the File List

Function Menu	Description
View	Open the file at the cursor
Details	Open the details of the file at the cursor
Create New Message	Create a message with the file at the cursor attached



◀ Note ▶

Streaming files (files played as downloaded) cannot be saved. While a file is streaming, the connection is active even during a pause.



My Saved Page

■ Saving in My Saved Page

Save pages for future reference in My Saved Page to open them quickly. The entire page is saved in My Saved Page so that opening the page does not require communication. Save up to 100 pages in My Saved Page.

- 1 **Open a Web page**
- 2 **Select *Save* from the Function menu**
- 3 **Select *Save this page***
- 4 **Enter a name using the keypad**
- 5 **Press  **

Tip

- **When the memory is full or the maximum number of pages have been saved**
A confirmation appears if the memory space is full or the maximum number of pages have already been saved. Perform the following steps to delete a page saved in My Saved Page and continue saving a page:
 - ① Press  
 - ② Select a page in My Saved Page
- **To refresh My Saved Page**
 - ① Open a Web page
 - ② Highlight a page and select ***Refresh*** from the Function menu

■ Viewing a Page in My Saved Page

- 1 **Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *My Saved Page***
- 2 **Select a page**

Tip

To check the name or URL of a page





- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Highlight a page and select ***Details*** from the Function menu

To update the name or URL of a page

- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Highlight a page and select ***update*** from the Function menu

■ Editing Saved Pages

Rename a page saved in My Saved Page.

- 1 **Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *My Saved Page***
- 2 **Highlight a page and select *Rename* from the Function menu**
- 3 **Enter a name using the keypad**
- 4 **Press  **

■ Deleting from My Saved Page

1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* →
My Saved Page

2 Delete a page

To delete one at a time

- 1 Highlight a page and select **Delete** from the Function menu
- 2 Press  

To delete all pages

- 1 Select **Delete All** from the Function menu
- 2 Press  

Bookmarks

■ Saving to Bookmarks

Save the URLs of frequently visited Web pages in Bookmarks to access them easily. Save up to 100 Bookmarks.

1 Open a Web page

2 Select **Save** from the Function menu



3 Select **Mark page**

4 Check the name and URL, and press  

Tip

- **If the name is not correct**

A confirmation appears if the URL does not have a name or the same name is already saved. Perform the following steps to enter a name:

- 1 Enter a name using the keypad
- 2 Press  

- **When the memory is full or the maximum number of bookmarks has been saved**

A confirmation appears if the memory space is full or the maximum number of Bookmarks has already been saved. Perform the following steps to delete a Bookmark and continue saving a Bookmark:

- 1 Press  
- 2 Select a Bookmark to delete

■ Accessing from Bookmarks

1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* →
Bookmarks

2 Select a Bookmark

Tip

- **To view the name or URL of a Bookmark**

- 1 Perform Step 1
- 2 Highlight the Bookmark and select **Details** from the Function menu

- **To view Bookmarks from the Data Folder**

- 1 Press  and select  **Data Folder** → **Bookmarks**
- 2 Select **Phone**
- 3 Select a Bookmark



■ Editing Bookmarks

Change the name or URL of a saved Bookmark.

- 1 Press  and select  **Vodafone live!** → **Bookmarks**

2 Edit a Bookmark

To change the name

- 1 Highlight a Bookmark and select **Rename** from the Function menu
- 2 Enter a name using the keypad
- 3 Press  

To change the URL



- 1 Highlight a Bookmark and select **Edit Url** from the Function menu
- 2 Enter the URL using the keypad
- 3 Select **OK** from the Function menu

■ Deleting Bookmarks

- 1 Press  and select  **Vodafone live!** → **Bookmarks**

2 Delete a Bookmark

To delete one at a time

- 1 Highlight a Bookmark and select **Delete** from the Function menu
- 2 Press  

To delete all Bookmarks

- 1 Select **Delete All** from the Function menu
- 2 Press  

Access History

Up to 30 of the most recently accessed URLs per domain for up to 10 domains are saved in the Access History. Access a previously visited Web page from the History easily.

- 1 **Select History from the Function menu from a Web page**

2 Use History

To access the Web

Select an entry in the History

To delete one at a time

① Highlight an entry and select **Delete** from the Function menu

② Press 

To delete all entries

① Select **Delete All** from the Function menu

② Press 

Tip

To view the URL of a History entry

① Perform Step 1

② Highlight an entry and select **Details** from the Function menu

Operations from a Web Page

Refresh/Reopen a Web Page

Update the current Web page to the latest content. Some Web pages cannot be updated.



Select **Refresh** from the Function menu from a Web page

Tip

Updating My Saved Page

Refreshing My Saved Page updates the contents saved in the handset.

To refresh My Saved Page:

① Press  and select  **Vodafone live!** → **My Saved Page**

② Highlight a page and select **Refresh** from the Function menu

Searching for a Text String on a Web Page

Search for a text string on a Web page. The found text string will be highlighted.

1 Select **Advanced** → **Find Text** from the Function menu of a Web page

2 Enter a text string using the keypad

3 Press 



4 Select **Cancel** from the Function menu

Tip

To repeat searching



① Perform Steps 1 to 3

② Press 

When there is a matched text string below the cursor position,  appears. When there are no matched text strings,  appears.

■ Copying a Text String from a Web Page

Copy a text string from a Web page and use it to enter text.

- 1 **Select *Advanced* → *Copy Text* from the Function menu of a Web page**
- 2 **Move the cursor to the first character of the copy range and press** 
- 3 **Move the cursor to the last character and press** 

■ Viewing a URL

View the URL of the currently open Web page or detailed information about the page.

Select *Details* from the Function menu of a Web page

■ Sending a URL by Messaging

Send the currently open Web page URL by Messaging.

- 1 **Select *Advanced* → *Send page* from the Function menu of a Web page**
- 2 **Create a message**

☾ Tip ☽

To send a message

The URL of the Web page is automatically inserted in the message text. Enter the recipient, etc. and send the message. For creating a message, see "Sending Messages".

■ Viewing Certificates

While opening a Web page protected by SSL, view the server certificate of the site or root certificates saved on the handset by default.

- 1 **Select *Advanced* → *Settings* → *Certificates* from the Function menu of a Web page**
- 2 **View a certificate**

To view the Server Certificate

 - ① Select *Current*
 - ② Highlight a certificate and press 

To view a Root Certificate

 - ① Select *Root*
 - ② Highlight a certificate and press 

☾ Tip ☽

- **Server Certificate**

A Server Certificate authenticates the legitimacy of the server performing SSL communications.

- **Root Certificate**

A Root Certificate authenticates the legitimacy of the certification authority issuing a Server Certificate.

Other Web Settings

Multimedia

Set to not download images or sounds contained in a Web page to open the page more quickly.

Default Setting Images: Show images
 Sounds: Play sounds

1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *Settings* → *Multimedia*

2 Select and configure items

To set image download

- ① Select *Images*
- ② Select an option

To set sound download

- ① Select *Sounds*
- ② Select an option

Scroll Step (Scrolling Unit)

Set the screen scroll to *Single line*, *Half page* or *Whole page*.

Default Setting Single line

1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *Settings* → *Scroll Step*

2 Select an option

Setting Font Size

Set the Web page Font Size to *Small*, *Medium* or *Large*.

Default Setting Medium

1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *Settings* → *Font Size*

2 Select an option

Security Settings

■ Cookies

Cookies are data used to identify a user by a provider of information and are saved on the handset automatically. Set whether to enable Cookies. All saved Cookies on the handset can be deleted.

Default Setting Enabled

1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *Settings*

2 Select and configure items

To set whether enable Cookies

- ① Select *Cookies*
- ② Select an option

To delete all Cookies

- ① Select *Clear Cookies*
- ② Press 

■ Manufacture Number

The Manufacture Number is a unique number that identifies the user. The number may be required to access certain information on the Web. Set whether to send the Manufacture Number when requested.

Default Setting OFF

- 1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *Settings* → *Manufacture Number*
- 2 Select an option

■ Viewing Certificates

View Root Certificates saved on the handset by default.



- 1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *Settings* → *Certificates*
- 2 Select *Root*

3 Highlight a certificate and press  **Tip****To view the Server Certificate**

- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Select *Current*

Initialising Web**■ Restoring Web Settings to Their Defaults**

Restore Web Settings to their defaults (☞ “Settings to be Reset” in “Appendix”).

- 1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *Settings* → *Reset Settings*
- 2 Press 

■ Deleting Entries from the Access History

- 1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* → *Settings* → *Clear History*
- 2 Press 

■ Clearing the Cache of Web Pages

Delete all Web page data saved in the Cache.

1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!* →
Settings → *Clear Cache*

2 Press  

26

Other Web Settings

Basic V-application Operations

Before Using V-applications

Default V-application

The following V-application is pre-installed and can be used immediately without any downloading.

- **COOL HOCKEY2**

Network Connecting V-applications

Some V-applications require a Web connection to run. For communication fees for using network connecting V-applications, contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

- **To view Java™ and JBlend™ licenses**

Press  and select  *V-applications* →

Java™ Information

Downloading V-applications

V-applications are available for download from web sites. Up to 100 V-applications can be downloaded.

- 1 Press  and select  *Vodafone live!*
- 2 Open a Web page that provides V-applications

3 Select a V-application



Download Confirmation

- 4 Press  



- 5 Press  

To launch the V-application immediately

Press  

Tip

- **If another V-application is paused during download**
The V-application automatically ends.

- **To update a V-application**

A confirmation appears if downloading an update for an already saved V-application. Select **Overwrite** to overwrite the previous version.

- **To cancel the download**

Press .

- **To check memory usage**

① Press  and select  **Settings** → **Other Settings** →

Memory Check

② Use  to view the information

Note

- **A V-application cannot be downloaded when**

- The file is invalid
- The V-application is too large
- The maximum number of applications will be exceeded
- There is insufficient memory
- The V-application is prohibited from being saved

- **When the battery is low, the handset may fail to download a V-application. Ensure that the battery is sufficiently charged before downloading.**

- **To access a V-application, use the same set of the USIM Card, the handset and the miniSD memory card as that used when the application was downloaded.**

Download Confirmation

When selecting a V-application to download from a Web page, a confirmation to download appears. View the file size.

Press   to cancel downloading at this point.



Data size to download from the Web

Launching V-applications

1 Press  and select  **V-applications** → **V-application Library**




2 **Select a V-application**

Tip

- **To switch to a V-application Library on the memory card**

After Step 1, select **Change Memory Card** from the Function menu. To switch from the memory card to the handset, select **Change Phone** from the Function menu.

• V-application Library Indicators

-  Pre-installed V-application
-  Downloaded V-application
-  V-application set as a Screensaver

• To launch a V-application from the Data Folder

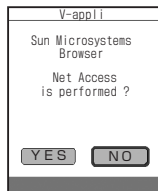
- ① Press  and select  **Data Folder** → **V-applications**
- ② Select a V-application

• To add a shortcut to the V-application Library on the desktop

- ① Select **Add Desktop** from the Function menu from the V-application Library
- ② Choose **YES**

■ Confirmations while a V-application Is Running

When a V-application requires communication or message exchange, a confirmation appears. Choose **YES** to proceed using the requested function. Change which confirmations appear and when they appear using Security Levels.



Connecting to the Internet

A confirmation appears when

- Sending MMS · Sending SMS · Accessing the mail server
- Deleting a received message · Deleting a sent message
- Dialling a phone number · Accessing the Web
- Saving to the Phone Book · Deleting file data

- Saving new file data · Overwriting file data · Renaming a file
- Renaming a folder · Creating a folder
- Performing IrDA communication

Ending/Pausing/Resuming a V-application

■ Ending or Pausing a V-application

1 Press  while a V-application is running

2 Select an item

To pause


Select **Pause**

To end

Select **End**



For a Screensaver V-application

Pressing  while a screensaver V-application is running pauses the V-application and Stand-by Display opens.

■ Resuming Paused V-applications

 appears at the top of the display if a V-application is paused.

1 Press  for 1+ seconds while a V-application is paused to open the Task Menu

2 Select a V-application

Managing V-applications

■ Checking Properties

View detailed information about a V-application.

1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-application Library*

2 Highlight a V-application and select *Property* from the Function menu

Tip

- **The detailed information contains**

The name of the V-application, the vendor name, version, record size and whether it can be set as a screensaver.

- **To access V-application related sites**

Select *To Web* from V-application Property to access a site related to V-applications.

■ Moving a V-application

Move a V-application from the handset to the memory card or visa versa.

1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-application Library*

2 Highlight a V-application and select *Change Entry (Move)* from the Function menu

3 Choose *YES*

Note

Moving a V-application set as a screensaver to the memory card cancels the screensaver setting.

■ Deleting a V-application

1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-application Library*

2 Highlight a V-application and select *Delete V-application* from the Function menu

3 Choose *YES*

Note

- The pre-installed V-application cannot be deleted.
- A V-application set as the screensaver cannot be deleted.

Using V-applications



V-application Screensaver

Set a V-application as a screensaver running in standby.

A V-application saved to the memory card cannot be set as the screensaver.

Default Settings

- Screensaver: OFF
- Select V-application: None
- Start Time: 3 seconds
- Sleep Time: 0 minute

1 Press  and select  **V-applications** →
V-applications Settings →
V-application Screensaver

2 Select and configure items


To enable a V-application screensaver

- ① Select **Screensaver**
- ② Choose **ON**


To select a V-application

- ① Select **Select V-applications**
- ② Select a V-application

To set a starting time

- ① Select **Time Settings** then **Start Time**
- ② Select an option
- ③ Press 

To set Sleep Time

- ① Select **Time Settings** then **Sleep Time**
- ② Select an option
- ③ Press 

3 Press  **Save** and choose **YES**

 **Tip** 

• **To disable a V-application screensaver**

In Step 2, select **Screensaver** then choose **OFF**.

• **Start Time and Sleep Time**

Start time indicates a period in which the display switches from Stand-by Display to a V-appli screensaver. Setting Sleep Time pauses a V-application screensaver if no operation is performed for a specified period. Select the time after the last operation is performed before the screensaver pauses.

• **To set a V-application as a screensaver from the V-application Library**

Highlight a V-application and select **V-application Screensaver** from the Function menu.

V-application Screensaver does not appear for a V-application that cannot be set as a screensaver.

 **Note** 

Some V-applications cannot be set as a screensaver.

V-applications that cannot be set as a screensaver do not appear in Select V-application.

Setting V-application Security Levels

■ Setting Security Levels



Some V-applications require communication or message exchange while running. Set whether to open a confirmation when these functions are requested for each V-application.

The following security level items can be set:

Item	Description
Phone Call	Customise the settings to make a call
Net Access	Customise the settings to access the Web
Messaging	Customise the settings to send/receive messages
Local Connection	Customise the settings for performing Ir/DA communication or for using as a remote controller
Read User Data	Customise the settings to use the Phone Book
Write User Data	Customise the settings to create, delete or rename folders
Recording	Customise the settings to capture with the Camera or record sounds

Default Settings

- Phone Call: Check at Each Usage
- Net Access: Check at Each Start
- Messaging: Check at Each Usage
- Local Connection: Check at Each Start
- Read User Data: Check at Each Usage
- Write User Data: Check at Each Usage
- Recording: Check at Each Start

- 1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-application Library*
- 2 Highlight a V-application and select *Security Level* from the Function menu
- 3 Select an item and customise the Security Level



Tip

Description of Security Levels



- **Check at Beginning:** A confirmation appears only when the V-application is launched for the first time.
 - **Check at Each Start:** A confirmation appears every time the V-application is launched.
 - **Check at Each Usage:** A confirmation appears every time the running V-application uses the function.
 - **Not using:** The V-application does not use the function.
- Settings that can be selected vary depending on the item.

Note

Depending on the V-application, available security level items vary.
Unavailable items do not appear.

Resetting Security Levels

Restore security level settings to their defaults.

- 1 Press  and select  *V-applications* →
V-application Library
- 2 Highlight a V-application and select *Security Level*
from the Function menu
- 3 Select *Reset Settings*
- 4 Choose *YES*

Other V-applications Settings

Call Preferred

Select the behaviour of the handset when an incoming call/message or an Alarm Time arrives while a V-application is running.

Default Setting Call Preferred

1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-applications Settings* → *Call Preferred*

2 Select an option

.....



Incoming Call/Message or an Alarm Time Arrives while a V-application Is Running



The handset reacts in the following manner depending on the Call Preferred setting:

- **When Call is selected**

The V-application pauses and the handset notifies of an incoming call/message or alarm. When the V-application screensaver is running, the screensaver does not pause and a notification of an incoming call/message or alarm appears.

- **When Alert is selected**

The V-application keeps running. The handset notifies of an incoming call/message or alarm with notification (a phone number or a name appears) or alarm notification. To pause or end the V-application, press . When a call arrives, press  to answer the call without pausing or ending the V-application.

When a call arrives while the V-application screensaver is running with the handset folded, press a side key  or  to answer the call depending on the settings in Answer Settings or Record Message, in the same manner as while a V-application is not running.

.....

Volume/Vibrator

Setting Play Volume

Adjust the volume of V-application sound effects.

Default Setting Level 4

1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-applications Settings* → *Volume/Vibrator* → *Volume*

2 Use  to adjust the volume and press  **Set**



When Manner Mode is set

Settings in Manner Mode take precedence while a V-application is running.

Setting the Vibrator

Set whether to enable the vibrator as programmed in a V-application.

Default Setting ON

1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-applications Settings* → *Volume/Vibrator* → *Vibrator*

2 Select an option



Tip

When the Manner Mode is set

Settings in the Manner Mode take precedence while a V-application is running.

Display Light

Select an option from the following for Display Light while a V-application is running:

Display Light Setting	Description
All Time ON	The Display always lights
All Time OFF	The Display does not light even when a key is pressed
Normal	The Display lights when a key is pressed

Set whether to blink as programmed in a V-application.

Default Setting ■ Light Settings: Normal
 ■ V-application Blink: ON

- 1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-applications Settings* → *Display Light*

2 Select and configure items

To set the Display Light

- ① Select *Light Settings*
- ② Select an option



To set the Display Blink

- ① Select *V-application Blink*
- ② Select an option

Initialising V-applications



Restoring V-applications Settings to Their Defaults

Restore V-applications Settings to their defaults (☞ “Settings to be Reset” in “Appendix”).

- 1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-applications Settings* → *Other V-applications* → *Reset Java™* → *Reset Settings*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Choose *YES*



■ Deleting All V-applications




Delete all downloaded V-applications saved in the V-application Library.




- 1 Press  and select  *V-applications* → *V-applications Settings* → *Other V-applications* → *Reset Java™* → *Memory Reset*
- 2 Enter the Security Code
- 3 Choose *YES*


Appendix



Main Features


Main Menu Group	Item	Sub Item	Description	Page
 V-applications	V-application Library		Use saved V-applications.	P 27-3
	V-applications Settings	V-application Screensaver	Set a V-application to run in standby automatically.	P 28-2
		Call Preferred or Alert Preferred	Set whether to leave V-application running at the time when an alarm is set or receiving a call.	P 29-2
		Volume/Vibrator	Set the sound effect volume or whether vibration is ON or OFF as programmed in a V-application.	P 29-2
		Display Light	Customise Display Light setting while a V-application is running and V-application's Blink setting.	P 29-3
		Other V-applications	Restore settings of a V-application to default or delete all V-applications.	P 29-4
	Java™ Information		View Java™ and JBlend™ licenses.	P 27-2
 Vodafone live!	Vodafone live!		Access Vodafone live! menu.	P 24-2
	Bookmarks		Access the Web using bookmarks.	P 25-5
	Enter URL		Access the Web entering a URL.	P 24-3
	My Saved Page		Open a saved Web page.	P 25-4
	Settings	Cookies	Set to enable or disable Cookies.	P 26-3
		Clear Cookies	Delete all Cookies.	P 26-3
		Scroll Step	Set the scrolling unit for Web pages.	P 26-2
Font Size		Set the Font Size on Web pages.	P 26-2	

Main Menu Group	Item	Sub Item	Description	Page
 Vodafone live!	Settings	Multimedia	Set whether to download images or sounds from a Web page.	P 26-2
		User ID Setting	Set whether to send a User ID when requested while browsing the Web.	P 26-3
		Clear History	Delete entries from the history of access.	P 26-3
		Clear Cache	Clear cache of Web pages.	P 26-4
		Reset Settings	Reset all Web settings to their defaults.	P 26-3
		Certificates	View Server Certificate or Root Certificate.	P 26-3
 Media Player		Melody	Play melodies.	P 10-2
		Image	Play images or animations.	P 10-3
		Audio & Video	Play videos.	P 10-5
		Settings	Set Play Pattern and Display Light for the Media Player.	P 10-7
 Messaging		Create Message	Create and send messages.	P 20-2
		Received Messages	View received messages.	P 21-2
		Sent	View sent messages.	P 21-2
		Unsent Messages	Re-send bounced messages, or re-send or send cancelled messages while sending all at once.	P 21-2
		Drafts	Save a message being edited.	P 21-2
		Templates	Save a template for a message.	P 21-2
		Server Mail Box	Retrieve, delete, or forward a message saved on the mail server.	P 22-2


Main Menu Group	Item	Sub Item	Description	Page
 Messaging	Settings	Sending	Set Message Expiry, Delivery Time or Default Message type.	P 23-3
		Receiving	Set Auto Receiving or reject messages from Anonymous senders.	P 23-4
		Receipts	Set whether to request Delivery Report or Acknowledge Delivery Report.	P 23-5
		Personalization	Edit Signature or Opening Phrase.	P 23-5
		Message Settings	Set to play attached sounds, the Font Size in the message text, SMS Centre phone number, or MMS Creation Mode.	P 23-6
 Camera		Video Mode	Switch to the mode to capture video clips	P 7-7
		Photo Mode	Switch to the mode to capture images	P 7-4
		Burst Mode	Switch to the mode to capture sequential images	P 7-6
		Chance Capture	Capture videos at the right moment	P 7-11
		Picture Voice	Add sounds to an image.	P 7-10
		Digital Camera Mode	Switch to the mode to capture large images	P 7-4
		Long Duration Mode	Switch to the mode to capture long video clips	P 7-8
		View Video	View captured/obtained videos and download more	P 7-12
View Photo	View captured/obtained photos and download more	P 7-12		
 Data Folder			Manage data on the handset or miniSD Memory Card.	P 12-2


Main Menu Group	Item	Sub Item	Description	Page
 Accessory	Schedule		Save Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary days.	P 15-2
	Alarm Clock		Use the handset as an alarm clock.	P 15-6
	Tasks		Manage progress of tasks.	P 15-8
	Text Memo		Save text strings to use for message text.	P 15-11
	Calculator		Use the handset as a calculator.	P 15-13
	Play/Erase Messages		Play or erase messages in Record Message or Voice Recorder.	P 15-12 P 16-5
	Record Message		Set Record Message.	P 16-4
	Voice Recorder		Record a voice in standby.	P 2-9 P 15-12
	Voice Announce		Record a voice to use as an alarm tone or answer message.	P 9-5
	Ir/Send Via IrDA		Exchange data with IrDA communication compatible Vodafone handsets or personal computers.	P 13-3
	USIM Operation		Exchange data between the handset and the USIM Card.	P 5-12
	Forwarding Image		Set whether to send an image or video when sending Phone Book Data via IrDA.	P 13-4
	Access Reader		Scan text information using the Camera.	P 15-13
	Bar Code Reader		Scan bar code information using the Camera.	P 15-16
	Memory Card		Access data saved on a miniSD Memory Card.	P 11-4
Own Dictionary		Save a simple reading to convert it to the target text string.	P 4-17	

Main Menu Group	Item	Sub Item	Description	Page
 Phone Book	Create Contact		Save Phone Book contacts on the handset or USIM Card.	P 5-3
	Search Contact		Search for a Phone Book contact selecting a search method.	P 5-9
	Utilities		Check which options are set with Utilities for a phone number or e-mail address or cancel options.	P 5-8
	Restrictions		Check or cancel restrictions set on the phone number.	P 14-5
	Manage Group		Change a Group name or set options with Utilities.	P 5-6
	My Contact Details		View your handset phone number or save your e-mail address or postal address.	P 2-13
	Call Log		Open a list of entries in Redial or Received Calls.	P 2-3
	Messaging Log		Open a list of e-mail addresses of sent or received messages.	P 2-5
	Mailing List		Create, view or edit a list with more than one e-mail address to send messages to all recipients at once.	P 23-2
 Settings	Manner Mode Set	Manner Mode	Set Manner Mode.	P 3-4
		Super Silent	Set Manner Mode to Super Silent.	P 3-4
		Original	Set Manner Mode to Original and configure options.	P 3-4
	Ringtone	Ring Volume	Adjust the ringtone volume.	P 9-2
		Select Ringtone	Select a ringtone.	P 9-2
		Vibrator	Set a vibration pattern.	P 9-4
		Illumination	Set Lamp blinking while receiving a call.	P 8-8

Main Menu Group	Item	Sub Item	Description	Page
 Settings	Ringtone	Contact Image	Set Contact Image ON or OFF while receiving a call.	P 5-4
		Answer Settings	Set key assignments for incoming voice calls.	P 2-7
		Fold Settings	Set call answering options when the handset is folded.	P 16-7
		Messaging Ring	Set a Ringing Time for a ringtone when a message arrives.	P 9-4
		Ringing Time	Set the delay time in seconds or set whether to notify of a call disconnected before ringing.	P 9-5
		Information Notice Settings	Set the method to notify of results when checking Missed Calls or New Messages while the handset is folded.	P 2-12
	Call Settings	Noise Reduction	Set a function to suppress ambient noise and hear the other party's voice more clearly to ON or OFF.	P 16-3
		Illumination in Talk	Set Lamp blinking during a call.	P 8-9
		Select Hold Tone	Set a voice prompt while an incoming call is on hold or an answered call is on hold.	P 9-7
	Video Call Settings	Image Quality	Set the image quality for video calls.	P 6-5
		My Image Sending	Set to use the image captured with the Camera or alternate image for video calls.	P 6-6
		Select Image	Select an image to send the caller while an incoming video call is on hold.	P 6-6
		Voice Call Auto Switch	Set whether to make a voice call when a video call fails.	P 6-6

Main Menu Group	Item	Sub Item	Description	Page
Settings	Video Call Settings	Select Image VC	Set a Main Image or the image size during a video call.	P 6-7
		Video Call Auto Answer	Set to automatically answer a video call from a caller already saved.	P 6-7
	Display Settings	Display	Set an image as Stand-by Display.	P 8-2
		Display Light	Set the Display Light for the Main Display, Sub Display and keypad.	P 8-3
		Colour Pattern	Set text and background colours.	P 8-4
		Sub Display	Set the options for the Sub Display.	P 8-7
		Font Settings	Set the font to be displayed on the Main Display and Sub Display.	P 8-7
		Desktop Icon	Edit or delete Desktop Icons.	P 8-5
		Select Language	Switch the display language between Japanese and English for the Main Display and Sub Display.	P 8-8
		Shortcut Menu	Save frequently used tasks in the Shortcut Menu for quick access.	P 16-6
		Menu Display Set	Set the display method of the Main Menu Guidance or sub items of menus between details and listing.	P 1-24
		Thumbnail Settings	Set whether to display images with image titles or thumbnails.	P 12-4
		Automatic Display	Set a specific phone number to appear when the handset is opened.	P 8-6
	Call Data	Call Duration	View the last call duration or total call duration.	P 2-12
		Reset Call Duration	Reset the total call duration.	P 2-13
		Call Time Display	Set whether to display call duration during a call.	P 16-3

Main Menu Group	Item	Sub Item	Description	Page
 Settings	Clock	Time and Date	Set Date and Time.	P 1-20
		Home Area Settings	Set the time difference between the Greenwich Mean Time.	P 1-20
		Clock Display	Set the appearance of the clock.	P 8-2
		Alarm Settings	Set the Alarm to Operation Preferred or Alarm preferred.	P 16-6
	Lock/Security	All Lock	Disable all operations except turning on or off the handset.	P 14-3
		PIM Lock	Disable operations on the Phone Book, Schedule or Messaging.	P 14-4
		Keypad Dial Lock	Disable dialling or sending messaging with the keypad.	P 14-5
		Reject Unknown	Set whether to reject incoming calls from phone numbers not saved in the Phone Book.	P 14-6
		Call Setting Without ID	Set an option to reject incoming calls without a Caller ID, or save phone numbers in the Reject List to prevent nuisance calls.	P 14-7
		Change Security Code	Change the Security Code.	P 14-2
		PIN Settings	Set the PIN1 entry options and change PIN1 or PIN2.	P 14-2
		Secret Mode	Switch to the mode to access secret data.	P 14-8
	Secret Only Mode	Switch to the mode to access only secret data.	P 14-8	
	External Option	Automatic Answer	Set the option to answer incoming calls automatically while a Handsfree Headset, an optional item, is connected.	P 16-8
	Network Settings	Retrieve Network Information	Retrieve network information to use Vodafone live!.	P 18-3
	Other Settings	Memory Check	Check the use of the memory space.	P 16-8
		Keypad Sound	Set whether to turn the keypad sound on or off.	P 9-6
		Charge Sound	Set whether to sound a tone when charging starts and charging ends.	P 9-6
		SRS_WOW Settings	Set whether to enable sound effects of a video with sounds.	P 10-8

Main Menu Group	Item	Sub Item	Description	Page
 Settings	Other Settings	Battery Level	Check the battery level with a sound and display.	P 1-14
		Side Keys Guard	Set to enable or disable side key operation while the handset is folded.	P 14-9
		Input Methods	Set options of the text input method, word Prediction or Guidance, or delete learned data.	P 4-16
		Pause Dial	Send push tones from the handset.	P 16-2
		Subaddress Settings	Set the Subaddress feature to ON or OFF.	P 16-7
		Prefix Settings	Save a number to add at the beginning of a phone number.	P 16-3
		Reset Settings	Restore settings to their default.	P 14-10
		Memory Reset	Delete all personal information including Phone Book and Schedule all at once.	P 14-10
	All Reset	Perform Reset Settings and Memory Reset all at once.	P 14-10	
	Network Service	Call Barring	Restrict making or receiving calls.	P 17-8
		Call Waiting	Activate or deactivate Call Waiting.	P 17-6
		Call Forwarding	Activate or deactivate Call Forwarding.	P 17-4
		Voice Mail	Listen to messages stored at the Voice Mail Centre.	P 17-6
		Direct Input Service	Save the Service Codes of frequently used services, or activate or deactivate services.	P 17-2

Settings to be Reset

Main Menu Group	Settings Restored to their Defaults by All Reset	
	Settings Restored to their Defaults by Reset Settings	Items Restored to their Defaults by Memory Reset
V-applications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The security level settings of V-applications • V-application Screensaver • Call Preferred or Alert Preferred • Volume/Vibrator • Display Light <p style="text-align: right;">1</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Downloaded data
Vodafone live!	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cookies • Scroll Step • Font Size • Multimedia • User ID Setting <p style="text-align: right;">2</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bookmarks • My Saved Page⁵ • Cookies • History • Cache • Web Memo
Media Player	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Play Pattern • Display Light • Listing and Set as Display Image of Audio & Video • Set Image Display • Sorting of Image or Audio & Video 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User-defined folders • Files other than Pre-installed files • Playlist of Audio & Video • Saved Original Animation
Messaging	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reply Period • Delivery Time • Default Message Type • Auto Receiving • Anonymous senders • Delivery Report • Acknowledge Delivery Report • Edit Signature • Enable/disable Signature • Edit Opening Phrase • Enable/disable Opening Phrase • Sounds • Font Size • MMS Creation Mode <p style="text-align: right;">3</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Received Messages • Sent Messages • Unsent Messages • Drafts • Templates • Folder names <p style="text-align: right;">4</p>

1 Items restored to their default by V-application Reset Settings.

2 Items restored to their default by Web Reset Settings.

3 Items restored to their default by Messaging Reset Settings.

4 Items restored to their default by Messaging Memory Reset.

5 Restored to the default by All Reset.

Main Menu Group	Settings Restored to their Defaults by All Reset	
	Settings Restored to their Defaults by Reset Settings	Items Restored to their Defaults by Memory Reset
Camera	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selected Camera (Rear Camera) • Change Display Size • File Size Setting • Storage Setting • Auto Save Set • Auto Timer delay time • White Balance • Shutter Sound • Change Continuous Mode • Interval/Number • Display Size • Image Tuning 	
Data Folder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sorting 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Files in the Other Files folder
Accessory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Calendar for Schedule, User Icons • Alarm Clock • Record Message (becomes OFF) • Ringing Time and Answer Message of Record Message • Start tone of Voice Announce • Forwarding Image 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Saved events in Schedule • Alarm Clock • Tasks • Text Memo • Recordings in Record Message • Recording in Voice Memo • Recordings in Voice Announce • Saved data in Own Dictionary • Saved data in Access Reader • Saved data in Bar Code Reader
Phone Book	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Utilities • Restrictions 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contacts in the Phone Book • Groups • My Contact Details (except the handset phone number) • Redial • Received Calls • Sent Address • Received Address • Mailing List

Main Menu Group	Settings Restored to their Defaults by All Reset	
	Settings Restored to their Defaults by Reset Settings	Items Restored to their Defaults by Memory Reset
Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <Manner Mode> • Settings in Original <Ringtone> • Ring Volume • Select Ringtone • Vibrator • Illumination • Contact Image • Answer Settings • Fold Settings • Messaging Ring • Ringing Time • Information Notice Settings <Call Settings> • Noise Reduction • Illumination in Talk • Select Hold Tone <Video Call Settings> • Image Quality • My Image Sending • Select Image • Voice Call Auto Switch • Select Image Video Call • Video Call Auto Answer <Display Settings> • Display • Display Light Colour Pattern • Sub Display • Font Settings • Select Language • Shortcut Menu • Menu Display Set • Thumbnail Settings • Automatic Display <Call Data> • Call Duration <Clock> • Home Area Settings • Clock Display • Alarm Settings <Lock/Security> • Keypad Dial Lock • Reject Unknown • Call Setting Without ID • Secret Mode • Secret Only Mode <External Option> • Automatic Answer <Other Settings> • Keypad Sound • Charge Sound • SRS_WOW Settings • Side Keys Guard • Input Methods • Subaddress Settings • Prefix Settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <Call Data> • Call Duration <Clock> • Time and Date <Other Settings> • Learned data of text input • Pause Dial <Network Service> • Voice Mailbox Number • Service Codes of Direct Input Service <Video Call Settings> • Original Image in Select Image

Main Menu Group	Settings Restored to their Defaults by All Reset	
	Settings Restored to their Defaults by Reset Settings	Items Restored to their Defaults by Memory Reset
Other Items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Earpiece Volume Level • Manner Mode status (to be cancelled) • The following options available during a video call: Video Call Settings (Brightness), Display Light 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Desktop Icon



Tip

Settings Restored to their Defaults by only All Reset

The Network Settings are set to Default after performing All Reset.

Multitasking Combination

The following table shows the available combinations of main tasks used concurrently.

Availability of a second task √ : Available — : Not available Space: Available if ending the current task

Second Task Current Status	V-applications	Vodafone live!	Messaging	Media Player	Camera	Data Folder	Accessory	Phone Book	Settings
V-application group running		√	√	√	√ ⁵	√	√ ⁶	√ ³	√ ⁷
Web/Messaging group running	√			√	√ ⁵	√	√ ⁶	√ ³	√ ^{7/9}
Accessory group running	√	√	√						√ ⁷
Settings group running	√	√	√	√	√ ⁵	√	√ ⁶	√ ³	
Voice Call in progress	—	√	√	—	— ¹	—	— ²	√ ³	— ⁴
Video Call in progress	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Accessing Vodafone live! services	√			√	√ ⁵	√	√ ⁶	√ ³	√ ^{7/9}
Packet Communication with a PC in progress	√	√	√	√	√ ⁵	√	√ ⁶	√ ³	√ ⁷
64K Data Exchange in progress	—	√	√	—	— ¹	—	— ⁸	√ ³	— ⁴

1 Only Photo Mode and Burst Mode are available.

2 Schedule, Tasks, Text Memo and Calculator are available. Access Reader and Bar Code Reader show a list or entries. (scanning is not available).

3 Restrictions cannot be set.

4 Time and Date, Keypad Sound, Pause Dial, Call Barring, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding, Voice Call (Play Messages is not available) and Direct Input Service are available.

5 Digital Camera Mode and Long Duration Mode are not available.

6 Voice Announce, Ir/Send Via IrDA, USIM Operation and Memory Card are not available.

7 Messaging Ring, Ringing Time, Alarm Settings, Colour Pattern, Sub Display, Font Settings, Select Language, Shortcut Menu, Thumbnail Settings, All Lock, PIM Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Reject Unknown, Secret Mode, Secret Only Mode, Retrieve Network Information, Memory Check, SRS_WOW Settings, Input Mode, Subaddress Settings, Prefix Settings, Reset Settings, Memory Reset and All Reset are not available.

8 Schedule, Tasks, Text Memo, Calculator and Own Dictionary are available. Access Reader and Bar Code Reader show a list or entries. (scanning is not available).

9 Unable to Retrieve Network Information simultaneously.

- When using one of the following tasks, another one cannot be used:
 - Video Call
 - Long Duration Mode on the Camera menu
 - Memory Check and Retrieve Network Information on the Settings menu
 - Ir/Send Via IrDA, USIM Operation and Memory Card on the Accessory menu
 - Edit Audio & Video

While the following is in progress, another task cannot be performed:

- Downloading a video
 - Saving a melody or image file
 - Moving/copying/deleting a file
 - Sorting files
 - Exporting/importing data to or from a miniSD Memory Card
 - Performing Reset Settings
 - Performing Reset Memory
 - Performing Reset All
- Depending on the task, a task may not be usable while another task is running.

Troubleshooting

Basic Operations

Handset does not turn on

Is  pressed for 2+ seconds?

➔ Press  for 2+ seconds.

Is the battery low?

➔ Replace or charge the battery

No operations are available even though handset is turned on

Is *PIN1 Code Entry Set* to *ON*?

➔ Enter the PIN1 code following the on-screen instructions if *PIN1 Code Entry Set* is *ON*.

Insert *USIM* or *This USIM cannot be recognized*. appears when the handset is turned on or tasks are accessed

Is the USIM Card correctly inserted?

➔ Check to see if the USIM Card is correctly inserted. If the message appears again after the card is correctly inserted, the USIM Card may have been damaged.

- ☑ Are you using the correct USIM Card?
- ➔ Check to see if a correct USIM Card is inserted. Use the USIM Card specified by Vodafone.

■ **Reading USIM Cannot operate or USIM カード読み込み中です 起動できません appears**

- ➔ The data on the USIM Card is being read. Try again later.

■ **Keys do not respond**

- ☑ Is **Side Keys Guard** set to **ON**, or is **All Lock** set? (🔒 appears)
- ➔ Set **Side Keys Guard** to **OFF**, or Cancel **All Lock**.

■ **Busy tone continues after dialling**

- ☑ Is 📶 (Out of the Service Area) displayed?
- ➔ Move to an area where signals are received and retry.
- ☑ Did you enter the entire phone number starting with the area code or the first zero?
- ➔ Dial the number including the area code or first zero.

■ 📶 (Out of the Service Area) appears and a call cannot be made from the handset

- ☑ Is the handset out of the service area or in a place where signals do not reach?
- ➔ Move to an area where signals are received and retry.

■ **Calls are interrupted or terminated**

- ☑ Is 📶 (Out of the Service Area) displayed, or is the handset in a place where signals do not reach?
- ➔ Move to an area where signals are received and retry.
- ☑ Is the battery low?
- ➔ Replace or charge the battery.

■ **Cannot make a call**


- ☑ Is All Lock set? (🔒 appears)
- ➔ Cancel All Lock.
- ☑ Is Keypad Dial Lock set? (🔒 appears)
- ➔ Cancel Keypad Dial Lock.
- ☑ Is Barring of Outgoing in Call Barring set?
- ➔ Deactivate Barring of Outgoing.

- ☑ Is Restrict Dialling in Restrictions set?
- ➔ Restrict Dialling prohibits all outgoing calls except to the specified numbers.
Release Restrict Dialling.

■ Cannot access a Phone Book contact

- ☑ Is the Phone Book contact saved as Secret Data?
- ➔ Set the Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.

■ Missed Call Notification does not appear when the side key is pressed

- ☑ Is *Side Keys Guard* set to *ON*? ( appears)
- ➔ Set *Side Keys Guard* to *OFF*.

■ The Sub Display does not change even when a call or message arrives

- ☑ Is *Stand-by* of *Sub Display* set to *ON*?
- ➔ Set *Stand-by* of *Sub Display* to *OFF*.

■ A clicking tone sounds during a call

- ☑ A noise may be heard when signal strength becomes weak and the handset belongs to a different cell.

■ Cannot charge the battery

- ☑ Is the Rapid Charger connector securely plugged in to the handset or Desktop Holder?
- ➔ Plug the connector securely.
- ☑ Is the Rapid Charger plug securely connected to an electric socket?
- ➔ Plug the connector securely.
- ☑ Is the battery pack installed in the handset?
- ➔ Install the battery properly.
- ☑ Is the handset securely placed on the Desktop Holder?
- ➔ Place the handset securely.
- ☑ Is the handset, battery or Desktop Holder charging terminals, Rapid Charger connector, the handset external connector, or Desktop Holder connector contacts clean?
- ➔ Use a dry cotton swab to clean the contacts.
- ☑ Is the battery charged in an ambient temperature below 5°C or over 40°C?
- ➔ Charge the battery in an ambient temperature of between 5°C and 40°C.
- ☑ Is the battery pack functional?
- ➔ Replace with a new battery.

☑ Is the battery fully charged after being charged repeatedly?

➔ The battery lifetime has elapsed. Replace with a new battery.

☑ Is the handset or battery warm during charging?

➔ If they become warm, charging may be interrupted. After the handset or battery becomes cool, try charging again.

■ **Charging time is short**

☑ Charging time becomes short when the battery is fully drained.

■ **Devices become hot**

☑ During charging, the Rapid Charger or Desktop Holder may overheat.

☑ The handset may overheat while being charged or during a long call.

➔ If the temperature is not too hot to touch, this is normal. If a device becomes too hot to touch, stop charging immediately, stop using the device and contact Customer Service (☎ P 30-46).

■ **The battery drains fast**

☑ Depending the operating environment (ambient temperature, battery level or signal strength), operations or settings, the battery may drain quickly.

➔ Use the device under appropriate environment (☞ “General Notes”) and reduce using tasks that require large electric consumption (video calls and V-applications).

■ **The Display flickers**

☑ Is the handset near a florescent light?

➔ Use the handset as far away from florescent lights as possible.

■ **While the Display Light is off, the Display looks dark**

☑ That is a characteristic of the Display. This is normal.

■ Vodafone live!

■ **Connection interrupted** appears

- ☑ This message appears when sending or receiving messages fails in a place where the signal is weak.
➔ Check the signal strength and re-send.
- ☑ This message appears if the Service Centre does not respond while communicating with the Service Centre, and the connection is interrupted.
➔ Try again later.

■ **送信できませんでした (Cannot send)** appears

- ☑ The Service Centre is under maintenance.
➔ Try again later.

■ **応答がないため接続が中断されました (No response. Connection interrupted)** appears

- ☑ This message appears when it cannot be verified that the Service Centre received the message.
➔ Try again later.

■ **Cannot connect to the network** appears

- ☑ The Service Centre did not receive the message.
➔ Try again later.

■ **Connection interrupted. Reconnect?** appears

- ☑ The connection is interrupted due to weak signal strength during transmission.
➔ Choose YES to reconnect.

■ **The message does not arrive at the recipient's handset**

- ➔ Ensure that the recipient does not set address filtering.
- ➔ Do not enter 184 or 186 in front of the phone number. Delete 184 or 186 and retry.

■ **Sha-mail cannot be sent**

- ☑ Check whether the recipient's device is compatible with MMS.
- ➔ If the recipient's device is Long Mail compatible, a message larger than 6 Kbytes, if Super Mail compatible, a message larger than 12 Kbytes (30 Kbytes if the message includes a JPEG or MPEG-4 file) cannot be received even though they can be sent (The above sizes include the recipient's address, subject and message text).

- ☑ Does the recipient's device handle the file format of the attachment?
- ➔ If the recipient's device does not handle the file format of the attachment, the image cannot be sent.
- ☑ Check whether the recipient subscribes to MMS, Super Mail or Long Mail.
- ➔ To receive messages with attachments such as an image file, a separate subscription for MMS, Super Mail or Long Mail is required. If the recipient does not subscribe to any of these, a message that exceeds 384 bytes cannot be received even though it can be sent (A message with a long message text reacts in the same way).

■ **No free space left to save a received message**

- ☑ The new message cannot be received (In this case, a message appears to notify of no free space). The messages that cannot be received will be stored at the Service Centre.
- ➔ Delete unnecessary received messages. After space is freed to receive new messages, the messages are automatically received from the Service Centre.

- ➔ Even if the total used space is less than 100%, a new message may not be received. Delete unnecessary received messages.

■ ***Can not download oversize file appears***

- ☑ The handset V-application Library is full.
- ➔ Delete unnecessary V-applications and start again.

■ ***Too many files Download cancelled appears***

- ☑ There are already 100 V-applications saved on the handset and the miniSD Memory Card.
- ➔ Delete unnecessary V-applications and start again.

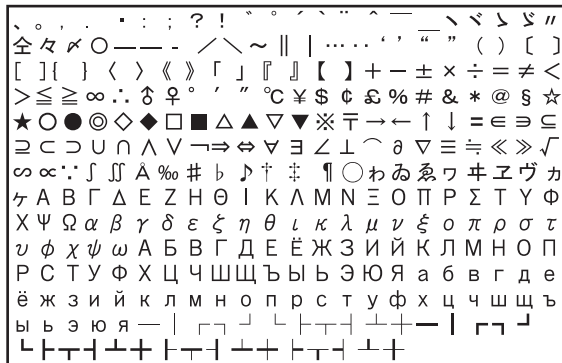
■ ***Received invalid data Download cancelled or Too large data Cannot download appears***

- ➔ The data cannot be downloaded to the 802N handset. Cancel the download.

Symbols and Pictographs

Symbols

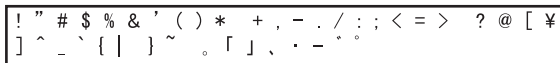
Full Pitch Symbols



Special Symbols



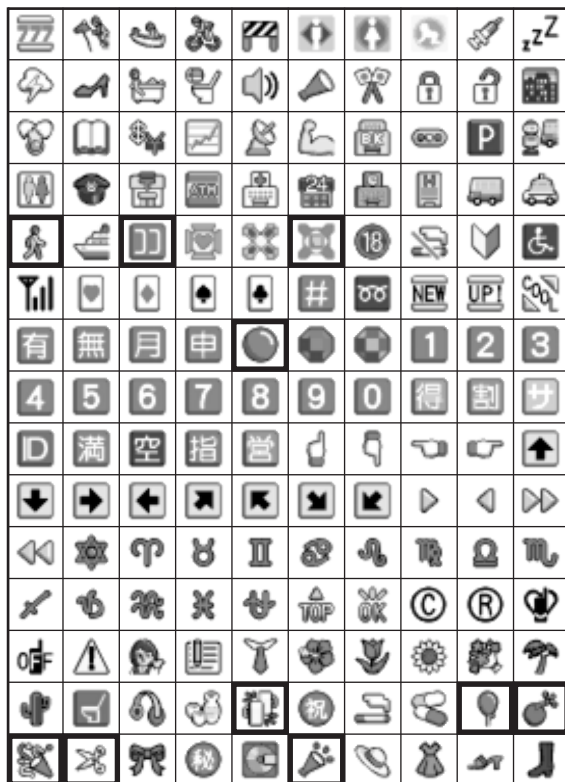
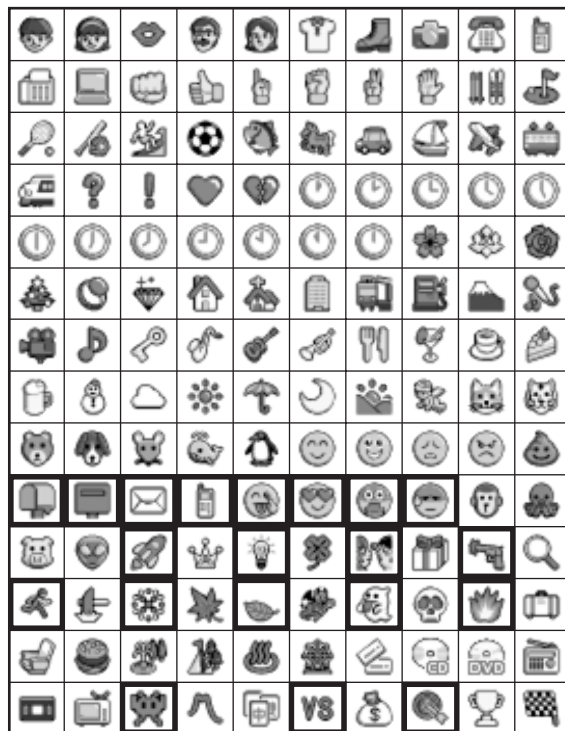
Half Pitch Symbols

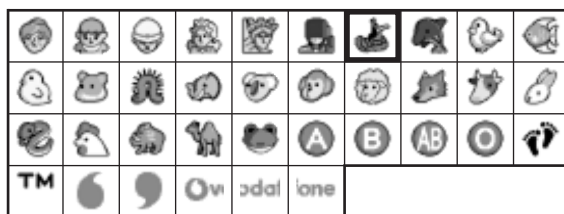
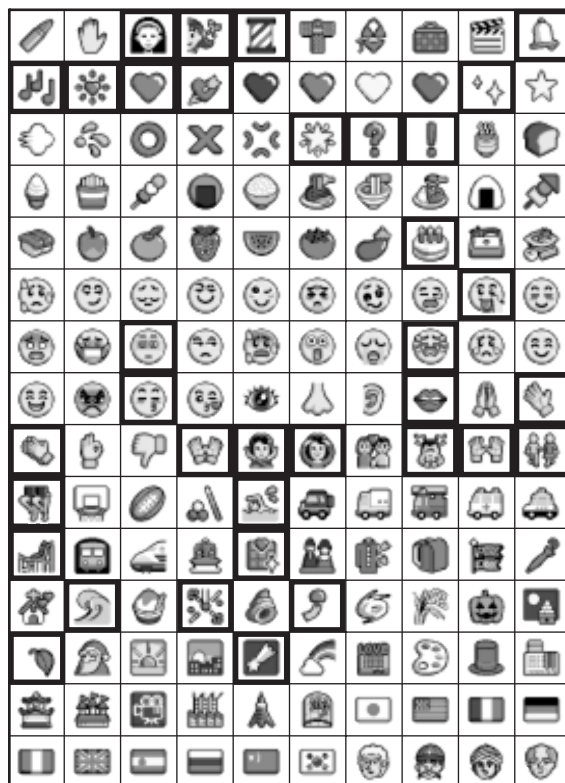







Symbols Converted from Reading

Enter	Symbol	Enter	Symbol
あっと	@	さんかく	△▲▽▼
あっとまーく		しゃせん	∧
いこーる	=	しかく	□■◇◆
えん	¥	たす	+
おす	♂	どう	∖ ∕ > < // 々
おなじ	々	ぱーせんと	%
おなじく	//	ひく	-
おんぷ	♪	ひしがた	◇◆
かける	×	ほし	☆★
かつこ	() [] {} ◇ ◆	まる	○●◎
	「」 『』 『』 『』 『』 『』	むげん	∞
	□ 「」	めす	♀
から	～	やじるし	→←↑↓
こめ	※	ゆうびん	〒
ころん	:	るーと	√
こんま	.	わる	÷

Pictographs





- Pictographs marked with  are animated.
- Some pictographs and animated pictographs may not appear on the recipient's Vodafone handset depending on the model.
-  is indicated only as  in the pictograph list. Select  to enter .

Smileys

Enter	Emoticon	Enter	Emoticon	Enter	Emoticon
ありがとう ありがとう	m(_)_m	ひやあせ	(^o^;	むか	(;-_+
ばんざい	\(^o^)/	あせあせ	(;-_A	こそこそ	(.-
わーい	(^o^)	びくっ	(*_*)	じーっ	(-_-)
おーい	(^o^)/	どき	(◎-◎:)	きこえない	!(-_-)!
ぶい	(^^v	え	(@_@:)	こまったもんだ	(^-^)&
ぎゃはは	(^o^)/^	めがてん	(.·:)	ぶたー)^o^(
あは	(o^o^o)	はてな	(.·?)	こあら	(-Q-)
にこ	(^-)	きらーん	(☆.☆)	いっぶく	(?!y~
にこ	(*^_^*)	しくしく	(T_T)	いっぶく	(.?)y~~~~
ちゅ	(^3)/	さよなら	(T_T)/^	ほし	☆彡
ちゅ	(^e^-)☆Chu!!	いたた	o_<	ねてる	(-_)zz
わくわく	o(^-^o	えーん	(:;)	ねむい	\(^o^)/
ういんく	(_-)	なぜ	(?_?)	めも	φ(..)
さよなら	(_-)/~	がーん	(□□)!!	うん	(^_)(o_o)
がんば	p(^^^)q	えへん	(^^)	かんばい	(^^)/▽☆▽\(^)
ね	(.。)b	む	(-_-メ)	ども	\(^_^)(^-)/
ぼりぼり	(^^*)	いかり	(^^)		

Memory Capacity

Messaging	
Received Messages and User Folders	Approx. 3 Mbytes
Sent, Unset Messages and Drafts	Approx. 1.5 Mbytes
Templates	Approx. 500 Kbytes

Web	
My Saved Page	Up to 100 entries
Bookmarks	100 entries

V-Applications	
V-Applications	3 to 100 entries

Data Folder	
Pictures	Up to 400 entries/Approx. 2 Mbytes
Videos	Up to 100 entries/Approx. 3 Mbytes
Sounds & Ringtones	Up to 160 entries/Approx. 840 Kbytes
V-Applications	3 to 100 entries
Bookmarks	100 entries
Templates	10 entries
Other Files	Up to 100 entries/Approx. 500 Kbytes

* The number of files varies depending on each file size.

Specifications

The specifications are subject to change without prior notice.

Vodafone 802N

Item	Specification
Weight	Approx. 125 g
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: Approx. 140 minutes Video Call: Approx. 90 minutes
Continuous Standby Time	Approx. 430 hours (with the handset closed and Sub Display OFF)
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approx. 50 x 100 x 26 mm (with the handset closed)
Maximum output	0.25 W

- The above values were calculated with the battery installed.
- Battery operating time was calculated with stable signal conditions. Talking in a weak signal area or leaving the handset in standby while out of the service area consumes much battery power and battery operating time may be reduced by more than half.
- Frequent use with the Display light on (for Vodafone live! operation, etc.) will result in shorter Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Setting moving images as Wallpaper may result in shorter Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.

- Running V-applications may result in shorter Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Continuous Talk Time was measured under the following conditions: In a stationary condition and with normal signal reception.
Continuous Standby Time was measured under the following conditions: In a stationary condition with a fully-charged new battery installed, the handset closed, no calls/operations in progress and normal signal reception.
Since the handset could be in both talk and standby modes, the actual talk time and standby time may become shorter than indicated above.

■ Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.8 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	850 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approx. 36 x 54 x 5 mm (without protruding parts)

■ Rapid Charger

Item	Specification
Input Voltage	AC 100 V, 50/60 Hz (Powered by the supplied cord)
Rated Input Capacity	9 VA (AC 100)
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.4 V / 600 mA
Operating Temperature	5°C to 40°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approx. 38 x 63 x 20 mm (without Power Cord)

■ Desktop Holder

Item	Specification
Input Voltage/Current	DC 5.4 V / 600 mA (with Rapid Charger connected)
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.4 V / 600 mA (with Rapid Charger connected)
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approx. 60 x 26 x 122 mm

Index

A

Access Reader	15-13
Acknowledge Delivery Report	23-5
Acquiring	
Mail List	22-2
Network Information	18-3
Add Frame	7-12
Add Recipients	20-4
Add Subject	20-5
After Sales Services	30-45
Alarm Clock	15-6
Alarms	15-7
Deleting	15-8
Enabling/Disabling	15-7
Setting	15-6
Alarm Property Settings	16-6
Alarms	15-4, 15-7, 15-9
All Calls Duration	2-12
All Lock	14-3
All Reset	14-10, 30-11
Alternative Image	6-4, 6-6
Animations	12-6
Answer Message	9-5, 16-4
Setting for a Group	5-7
Setting for a Phone Book Contact	5-7
Answer Settings	2-7
Answering a Voice Call	2-6
Automatic Answer	16-8
Call Rejection	2-8
On Hold	2-7
Using the Switch of the Handsfree Headset	16-8
Video Call	6-3
Answering a Video Call	6-3
Automatic Answer	16-8
Call Forwarding	6-4
Call Rejection	6-4
On Hold	6-3
Any Key Answer	2-7
Attaching Files	20-5
Setting MMS Creation Mode	23-7
Attachment List	20-6
Attachments	21-12
Opening	21-12
Saving	21-12
Auto Receiving	23-4
Auto Timer	7-5, 7-9
Automatic Answer	16-8
Automatic Display	8-6

B

Bar Code Reader	4-9, 15-16
Battery	i, 1-12
Battery Life	1-14
Inserting/Removing	1-15
Battery Level	1-13
Checking with Tone and Image	1-14
Bookmarks	25-5
Deleting	25-6
Editing	25-6
Saving	25-5
Burst Mode	7-4

C

Cache	24-2
Calculator	15-13
Calendar	15-2
Function Menu	15-2
Call Barring	17-2, 17-7
Call Duration	2-12
Call Forwarding Service	17-2, 17-4
Call Preferred	29-2
Call Rejection	2-8, 6-4
Call Setting Without ID	2-8, 14-7

Call Time Display	16-3
Call Waiting	17-2, 17-6
Caller ID Service	17-2, 17-9
Camera	7-2
Auto Timer	7-5, 7-9
Capturing with the Handset Folded	7-5
Editing Images	7-12
Editing Videos	7-14
Images	7-4
Sequential Images	7-6
Videos	7-7
Viewing Images	7-12
Cancelling	
DPOF Setting	7-16
Utilities Setting	5-8
Capturing Images	7-4
Centre Access Code	1-26
Chance Capture	7-11
Changing	
Message Type	20-5
SMS Centre Number	23-7
Character Stamp	7-13
Charge Sound	9-6
Charger	1-12
Charging	
Using the Desktop Holder	1-17
Using the In-Car Charger	1-18
Using the Rapid Charger	1-16

Checking	
Call Duration	2-12
Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary	15-4
Memory Space Usage	11-5, 16-8
Missed Alarms	2-11
Missed Calls	2-11
New Messages	2-11, 19-2
Record Message	2-11
Tasks	15-9
Voice Mail Message	2-11
Clear Cache	26-4
Clear Cookies	26-3
Clear History	26-3
Clock Display	8-2
Communication	
Simultaneous	2-10
Contact Image	5-4
Cookies	26-2
Copy Text	25-8
Copyright Information	10-2
Create Message	20-2
Create Message (header fields)	20-4
Create Message (message editor)	20-3
Function Menu	20-6
Cursor	1-23, 4-2
Moving to Beginning/End of Text	4-19
Customer Service	30-46
Customising Handset Address	18-4

D

Data Exchange	16-9
Data Folder	
Capacity	12-3
Creating Sub Folders	12-9
Deleting Files	12-11
Deleting Folders	12-10
Format	12-3
Function Menu	12-5
Maximum Number of Files	12-3
Moving Files	12-10
Renaming Files	12-10
Renaming Folders	12-9
Toggling Display	12-4
Using Image Files	12-5
Using Sound Files	12-7
Default Folders in the Data Folder	12-2
Default Message Type	23-4
Deleting	
Alarm Clock Setting	15-8
Alert Message	19-2
Attachments	20-7
Bookmarks	25-6
Contacts	5-13
Desktop Icons	8-6
Downloaded V-applications	29-4
Entries in Schedule/Holiday/Anniversary	15-5
Entries in Tasks	15-10

Font Settings	8-7
Font Size	23-7
Forward	19-4, 21-7
Messages on the Mail Server	22-3
Forwarding Image	13-4
Frame	7-6
Front Camera	1-7, 6-4, 7-5, 7-9
Functions for Promoting Mobile Manners	3-2
Function Menu	1-23
Notations	1-23
Using	1-23
G	
Group Utilities	5-8
H	
Handset Codes	1-25
Centre Access Code	1-26
Network Password	1-26, 17-8
Security Code	1-25
Handset Power	1-19
On/Off	1-19
Handsfree	2-10, 6-2, 6-3
Handsfree Headset	6-3, 16-7
Hiragana Input Method	4-5, 4-11
History	25-6
Home Area Settings	1-20

I

Icons

Desktop Icons	8-5
Data Folder File Icons	12-3

Image Viewer 21-12 |

Images 10-3 |

Adding Sound	7-10
Brightness	7-13
Clipping Area	12-6
Creating Animations	12-6
Edit	7-12
Four Image Composites	12-6
Function Menu before Capturing	7-5
Function Menu for a List/while Playing/while Pausing	10-3
Positioning	12-5
Priority of Images Displayed while Receiving a Call	5-5
Rotate	7-13
Set as Display Image	12-5
Thumbnails of Image	12-4

Importing 11-8 |

In-Car Charger 1-18 |

Indicators

All Lock	14-3, 14-8
Call Log & Message Log	2-5
Dialled calls	2-5, 2-6
Main Display	1-10

Message	21-2
Received Calls	2-5
Sub Display	1-11
V-application Library	27-4

Information Notice Settings 2-12 |

Infrared Port 13-2 |

Input Method 4-16 |

Input Mode 4-3 |

Insert Mode 4-18 |

International Access Code 2-2 |

International Calls 2-2 |

Ir/Send Via IrDA 13-3 |

Receive All	13-4
Receive One	13-3
Send All	13-3
Send One	13-3
Session Number	13-3

K

Kanji Hiragana Input Mode 4-3 |

Katakana Input Mode 4-6 |

Key & Menu 1-21 |

Keypad Dial Lock 14-5 |

Keypad Sound 9-6 |

Kuten Code List 30-22 |

Kuten Codes 4-10 |

L

Lamp	1-7
Illumination	8-8
Illumination in Talk	8-9
Language	8-8
Light	1-7, 15-18
Line Feed	4-2, 4-8
Long Duration Mode	7-7
Look-up Address	20-4

M

Macro Switch	15-14, 15-16
Mail Server	22-2
Server Mail Volume	22-2
Mailbox	21-2
Mailing List	23-2
Deleting	23-3
Initializing List Name	23-3
Saving	23-2
Using	20-3
Main Display	1-10
Capturing Window	7-3
Colour Pattern	8-4
Desktop Icon	8-4
Display Settings	8-2
Text Entry Window	4-2
Video Call Screen	6-2

Main Features	30-2
Main Image	6-2, 6-4
Main Menu	1-21
Making a Call	2-2
Function Menu	2-3
International Call	2-2
Phone Book	5-9
Received Address	2-5
Received Calls	2-4
Redial	2-3
Sent Address	2-5
Showing/Withholding Caller ID	2-2
Two-touch Dialling	5-11
Using a Handsfree Headset	16-7
Video Call	6-2
Making a Video Call	6-2
Showing/Withholding Caller ID	6-3
Manage Group	5-6
Managing	
Files	12-10
Folders	12-9
Manner Mode	3-3
Customising	3-4
Releasing	3-3
Setting	3-3
Manufacture Number	26-3
Marker Stamp	7-13
Media Player	10-2, 11-6
Display Light while Playing	10-7

Displaying Images	10-3
Function Menu	10-3, 10-4, 10-5
Playing Melodies/Sounds	10-2
Playing Videos	10-5
Playing with a Playlist	10-6
Setting Play Pattern	10-7
Viewing Data on the miniSD Memory Card	11-5
Melody	10-2
Function Menu for a List/while Playing/ while Pausing	10-3
Operations while Playing a File	10-2
Playing	10-2
Memory Capacity	30-32
Memory Card	11-2
Memory Check	16-8
Memory Reset	14-10, 23-8, 29-4, 30-11
Menu Display Set	1-23
Menu Operations	1-21
Cancelling	1-22
Closing	1-22
Notations	1-23
Opening the Main Menu	1-21
Select Items by Entering Numbers	1-23
Message Expiry	20-10, 23-3
Message Indicators	21-2
Message Priority	20-10
Message Size	7-15
Message Type	20-3

Default Message Type	23-4	Restoring Message Settings	23-8	MMS Compatible Files	23-7
Message Window	21-3	Saving	20-10	MMS Creation Mode	23-7
Function Menu	21-5	Send Messages	21-11	Move to Folder	21-6
Messaging	18-2	Sending	20-5	Moving Received SMS to USIM	21-14
Accessing the Internet	21-11	Setting Font Size	23-7	Multi Selector	1-8, 1-9
Attaching Files	20-5	Setting Sending Options	20-9	Messaging/Web Operations	1-24
Attachment List	20-6	Sorting Received Messages	21-13	Multimedia	26-2
Auto Playing Sounds	23-6	Steps	20-2	Multitasking	1-24, 30-15
Copying	21-5	Viewing Message Text	21-2	My Contact Details	2-13, 4-9
Create Contact	21-4, 21-11	Messaging Log	2-5	Function Menu	2-14
Creating	20-2	Messaging Ring	9-4	My Saved Page	25-4
Creating Slide Show	20-7	miniSD Memory Card	11-2	Deleting	25-5
Customising Handset Address	18-4	Check Status	11-5	Editing Saved Entries	25-4
Deleting	21-9	Creating Folders	12-9	Saving a Page	25-4
Entering a Subject	20-5	Data Export	11-8	Viewing a Saved Page	25-4
Entering Address	20-4	Data Import	11-8		
Entering Message Text	20-3	Data Transfer	11-7		
Entry Items	20-2	Deleting Files	11-9		
Folders	21-2	Editing Title	11-6		
Forwarding	19-4, 21-7	Files that can be Saved	11-5		
Making a Call	21-11	Formatting (Initializing)	11-4		
Marking Unread or Read	21-3	Handling	11-2		
Maximum Number of Characters	20-2	Inserting/Removing	11-3		
Moving Received SMS to		Viewing Data	11-5		
the USIM Card	21-14	Write Protect Switch	11-3		
Moving to Other Folders	21-6	miniSD Memory Card Adaptor	11-3		
Locking	21-9	Mirror Images	7-5		
Opening New Messages	19-2	Missed Calls	2-11		
Renaming Folders	21-6	MMS	18-2		
Reply	19-4, 21-6				

N

Network Connecting V-applications	27-2
Network Information	18-3
Network Password	1-26, 17-8
New Messages	2-11, 19-2
Noise Reduction	16-3
Nuisance Calls	
Preventing	2-8
Numerical Input Mode	4-3

O

On Hold

- Putting a Call on Hold 2-7, 6-3
- Selecting Hold Tone 9-7

Opening Phrase 23-6

Operations During a Call 2-9

Operations during a Video Call 6-4

Optional Services 17-2

- Call Barring 17-7
- Call Forwarding 17-4
- Call Waiting 17-6
- Caller ID Service 17-9
- Operations from a Landline Phone 17-4
- Operations using Service Codes 17-2
- Voice Mail 17-4

Original Animations 12-6

Overwrite Mode 4-18

Own Dictionary 4-17

P

Pause Dial 16-2

Phone Book Utilities 5-7

Phone Book 5-2

- Accessing Secret Data 14-8
- Editing 5-13
- Function Menu 5-11
- Group Settings 5-6

- Making a Call 5-10
- Saving 5-3
- Saving as Secret 14-8
- Saving from Logs 5-5
- Searching 5-9

Photo Mode 7-4

Pictograph List 30-28

Pictographs 4-7

Picture Voice 7-10

PIM Lock 14-4

PIN 1 1-6, 14-2

PIN 2 1-6, 14-2

PIN Codes 1-6, 14-2

PIN Lock 14-3

PIN Settings 14-2

PIN Unlock Code 1-6, 14-3

Play

- Melody/Sound 10-2
- Record Message 16-4
- Videos 10-5
- Voice Mail Message 17-6
- Voice Recorder 2-9, 15-12

Playlist 10-6

Playing Melodies/Sounds 10-2

- Function Menu for a List/while Playing/while Pausing 10-3
- Operations while Playing 10-2
- Play 10-2

Prediction 4-16

Prefix Settings 16-3

Pre-installed 10-2, 12-3

- Ringtones and Melodies 9-3

Push Tones 16-2

Q

Quick Silent 2-7

R

Rapid Charger i, 1-16

Rear Camera 1-7, 6-4, 7-5, 7-9

Reasons for No Caller ID 14-7

Received Address 2-5

- Function Menu 2-6

Received Calls 2-4

- Function Menu 2-6

Received Messages 21-2

Receiving

- MMS 22-2
- Mail List 22-2
- New Messages 19-2

Record Message 2-7, 16-4

- Deleting Recordings 16-5
- Playing Recordings 16-5
- Setting 16-4

Recording 9-5

- The Other Party's Voice during a Call 2-7

Voice for Ringtone/Alarm Tone	9-5
Your Voice	15-12
Redial	2-3
Function Menu	2-6
Refresh	25-7
Reject Anonymous	23-5
Reject Call List	2-8, 14-7
Reject Unknown	2-8, 14-6
Releasing	
All Lock	14-4
Keypad Dial Lock	14-5
Manner Mode	3-3
PIM Lock	14-4
Shortcut Menu	16-6
Reply	19-4, 21-6
Resend	21-8
Resend All	21-8
Reset Message Settings	23-8
Reset Settings	14-10, 26-3, 30-11
Resetting	
All Calls Duration	2-13
All Personal Information	14-10
All Saved Data	14-10
Desktop Icons	8-5
Security Level	28-4
V-applications Settings	29-3
Resize Messaging Size	7-15
Restricting Calls	14-5
Restrictions	2-8, 14-5

Retouch	7-13
Retry Feature	18-2
Ring Volume	9-2
Ring Time	2-8, 9-5
Ringtone	9-2, 12-7
Setting for a Group	5-8
Setting for a Phone Book Contact	5-7
Root Certificate	25-9, 26-3

S

Save Template	20-11
Received Messages	20-11
Sent Messages	20-11
Saving Attachments	21-12
Saving in Draft	20-10
Schedule	15-2
Accessing Secret Data	14-8
Alarm Comes	15-4
Checking Saved Entries	15-4
Deleting	15-5
Editing Saved Entries	15-5
Function Menu	15-5
Saving as Secret	14-8
Saving a Holiday/Anniversary	15-4
Saving Scheduled Events	15-3
Screensaver	28-2
Setting Sleep Time	28-2
Setting Start Time	28-2

Scroll Step	26-2
Secret Data	14-8
Accessing	14-8
Saving	14-8
Security Code	1-25, 14-2
Security Level Settings	28-3
Select Language	8-8
Select Reply	21-7
Select Ringtone	9-2
Selecting Holding Tone	9-7
Selecting Tasks	1-24
From Desktop Icons	8-5
From Menus	1-21
From Shortcuts	16-6
Sending Option	20-9
Sending URI	25-8
Sending/Hiding Caller ID	17-9
Sent Address	2-5
Sent Messages	21-2
Sequential Images	7-6
Server Certificates	25-8
Server Mail Box	22-2
Server Mail List	22-3
Server Mail Volume	22-2
Service Codes	17-2
Session Number	13-4
Setting	
All Lock	14-3

V

V-application Blink	29-3	Vibrator	9-4	Captured Image	7-12
V-Applications	18-3	Video Call	6-2	Certificate	25-8
Call Preferred/Alert Preferred	29-2	Automatic Answer	16-8	Data on miniSD Memory Card	11-5
Confirmation while V-application		Camera Image	6-4	Desktop Icon Properties	8-5
is Running	27-4	Display Light	6-4	File in the Data Folder	12-4
Deleting	27-5	Handsfree	6-2, 6-3	Message	21-2
Deleting All V-applications	29-4	Other Image	6-7	My Contact Details	2-13
Display Light	29-3	Showing/Withholding Caller ID	6-3	Text Memo	15-11
Downloading	27-2	Using a Handsfree Headset	6-3	URL	25-8
Ending	27-4	Voice Memo	6-4	vNote	12-7
Indicators	27-4	Voice ON/OFF	6-5	Vodafone Customer Centres	30-46
Launching	27-3	Video Call Settings	6-5	Vodafone live!	18-2
Memory Reset	29-4	Video Mode	7-7	Voice Announce	9-5
Pausing	27-4	Videos	7-7, 10-5	Voice Mail	17-2, 17-4
Property	27-5	Attach to Messaging	7-15	Play Messages	17-6
Restoring Settings	29-3	Chance Capture	7-11	Voice Mailbox Number	17-6
Resuming	27-5	Function Menu before Capturing	7-9	Voice Recorder	2-9, 15-12
Screensaver	28-2	Function Menu from Paused Video	7-10		
Setting Play Volume	29-2	Function Menu in a List and			
Setting Security Levels	28-3	Open Images	10-3		
Setting the Vibrator	29-2	Function Menu while Editing	7-15		
vBookmark	12-7	Operations while Pausing	10-6		
vCalendar	12-7	Operations while Playing	10-6		
vCard	12-7	Playing with a Playlist	10-6		
vfile	12-7	Sound and Effects	10-8		
Adding vfiles to a Function	12-8	Viewing Title or Title +Image	12-4		
Creating (Saving)	12-8	View Item	21-12		
		Viewing			
		Attachment List	20-6		
		Attachments	21-12		

W

Warranty	30-45
Web	18-3
Accessing by Entering a URL	24-3
Accessing from Bookmarks	25-5
Accessing from the Menu	24-2
Initialising	26-3
Web Memo	4-9, 24-5
Web Page	24-3
Accessing the Web	24-6

Authentication	24-5
Command Button	24-5
Copy Text	25-8
Create Contact	24-6
Creating MMS	24-6
Function Menu	24-4
Making a Video Call	24-6
Making a Voice Call	24-6
Menu	24-5
Navigating	24-3
Refresh	25-7
Saving a Melody File	25-3
Saving Files	25-3
Saving Image Files	25-2
Searching Text	25-7
Selection Button	24-5
Sending a URL by Messaging	25-8
Text Entry Field	24-5
Updating a Page	25-7
Uploading Files	24-5
Viewing Certificates	25-8
Viewing URL	25-8
Web Reset Settings	26-3
Word Prediction	4-9

Warranty and After Sales Service

■ Warranty

A Warranty is provided when you purchase the 802N handset.

- Check the name of the distributor and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty period is described in the warranty.

Vodafone are not liable for any damages to you or third parties caused by failure or faulty operation of the product that results in lost calls, etc.

■ Repair

See Troubleshooting before contacting us for repair. If no solution can be found or problems persist, contact the Customer Service (☎ P 30-46) or nearest Vodafone Shop.

Please provide a detailed description of the problem.

- During the warranty period, the repair is performed under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, the repair is performed if possible upon your request at your expense.

Customer Service

If you have any questions about a Vodafone handset or services, please call General Information. For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.













Vodafone Customer Centres

From a Vodafone handset, dial toll-free at

157 for General Information or

113 for Customer Assistance

■ Toll-Free Numbers from a Landline:

Subscription Area	Contacts	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane	General Information	 0088-259-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-259-113
Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi	General Information	 0088-247-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-247-113
Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-250-113

Vodafone 802N User Guide

January 2005 Version 1

Vodafone K. K.



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries and chargers of all manufacturers.

- Mobile phones, batteries and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned.
- To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone numbers, call logs, messages, etc.) before taking your handset to the shop.

* For more information, please dial 157 from a Vodafone handset for Customer Service or visit your nearest Vodafone Shop.

Model name: Vodafone 802N
Manufacturer: NEC Corporation